02-08-02

A



IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

In re Application of: GREGORY G. KUELBS Serial No. TO BE ASSIGNED Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2001 For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS

Examiner:

Art Unit:



TRANSMITTAL

ŝ

Box: Patent Application

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Please file the following enclosed documents in the subject application:

- 1. This Transmittal with Certificate of Express Mail;
- 2. Patent Application Specification, including Twelve Sheets of Drawings;
- 3. Declaration;
- 4. Assertion of Entitlement to Small Entity Status;
- 5. Assignment and Assignment Cover Sheet;
- 6. Power of Attorney;
- 7. Our check in the amount of \$410.00 to cover the \$370.00 Filing Fee and the \$40.00 Assignment Recordation Fee; and
- 8. Our return postcard which we would appreciate you date stamping and returning to us.

"EXPRESS MAIL" No. EV024943769US

Date of Deposit: _2/7/02

I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service Express Mail "Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 C.F.R. §1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box: Patent Application, P.O. Box 2327, Arlington, VA 22202-0327,

man E. (Nal)

Transmittal Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

YOT-1002-0001

"A LUK AN AN AN AN AN AN AN AN

The Filing Fee is calculated as follows:

££

L.

A strange -

ult gene gene gene filt filt ente tit gene ente tradit de la constant de la const

Basic Fee	\$370.00
Assignment Recordation Fees	\$ 40.00
Total	\$410.00

Enclosed is a check in the amount of \$410.00 to cover the \$370.00 Filing Fee and the \$40.00 Assignment Recordation Fee. No other fees is deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any additional fees, or credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

2/7/02 Date

James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

Transmittal Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

In re Application of:	ş	
GREGORY G. KUELBS	9	Examiner:
Serial No. TO BE ASSIGNED	3	
Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2001	9	Art Unit:
For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS	9 &	

CERTIFICATION UNDER 35 USC SECTION 122(b)(2)(B)(i) OF NO FOREIGN FILINGS

Honorable Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicant hereby certifies (through counsel) that the above-identified application filed herewith has not, and will not, be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multi-lateral international agreement that requires publication of applications eighteen (18) months after filing. Therefore, Applicant requests that the subject application not be published under 35 U.S.C. § 122(b)(1).

"EXPRESS MAIL" No. EV024943769US

Date of Deposit: ____/7/02

I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service Express Mail "Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 C.F.R. §1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box: Patent Application, P.O. Box 2327, Arlington, VA 22202-0327,

Jona E. Wette

Certification of No Foreign Filings Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

YOT-1002-0003

Reen

No additional fees are deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any additional fees, and credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

<u>2/7/02</u> Date

and the second

1 . F

James E. Walton Reg. No. 47,245 HILL & HUNN, LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile) jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYFOR APPLICANTS

Certification of No Foreign Filings Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

SPECIFICATION

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

TO ALL WHOM IT MAY CONCERN:

a u

×.

BE IT KNOWN that I, Gregory G. Kuelbs, residing in the city of Westlake,

Texas, have invented new and useful improvements in a

UMBRELLA APPARATUS

of which the following is a specification.

.

	"EXPRESS MAIL" No. EV024943769US
Date of Deposi	: <u>2/7/02</u>
I hereby certify Service Express date indicated Patent Applicat	that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal s Mail "Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 C.F.R. §1.10 on the above and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box: ion, P.O. Box 2327, Arlington, VA 22202-0327,
b	y Jona E. Watto

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

1 This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/267,018, 2 filed 7 February 2001, titled "Lighted Patio Umbrella Apparatus;" and of U.S. Provisional 3 Application No. 60/335,933, filed 2 November 2001, titled "Outdoor Lighting Systems with Cold Cathode Tubes." 4

5

7

8

þ

4

ŝ,

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

6 1. Field of the Invention:

a,

sť.

The present invention relates in general to patio umbrellas, and in particular, to an improved patio umbrella with integral lighting system and other modular electronic systems and components.

2. **Description of the Prior Art:**

10 11 There has been a recent increase in the interest in entertaining in a lawn and 12 garden environment. Patio furniture is quite popular and useful for outdoor entertaining, **C**13 especially in portions of the country that have warmer climates. However, the sun often [] _]4 presents an impediment to such outdoor entertaining. Consequently, sales have increased 15 for relatively large patio and table umbrellas for use in shielding or shading table areas and 116 people sitting around the tables from direct exposure to the sunlight. Given the relatively high degree of interest in patio umbrellas, it is likely that improved umbrellas, or umbrellas 17 18 with enhanced functions, will be well received in the marketplace.

,

19

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

4

1

12

Ĩζ

It is one objective of the present invention to provide a lawn or patio umbrella with
an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode tubes, light emitting diodes (LED's), or
florescent lights, to provide relatively bright outdoor light for reading and other activities that
require relatively high light intensities.

6 It is another objective of the present invention to provide an a lawn or patio umbrella
7 with an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights,
8 to provide relatively bright outdoor light, and its own rechargeable power supply, including
9 solar cells.

It is yet another objective of the present invention to provide a lawn or patio umbrella
with an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights,
to provide relatively bright outdoor light, and a motorized retraction system that aids in opening and closing the umbrella.

It is yet another objective of the present invention to provide a lawn or patio umbrella with an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights, to provide relatively bright outdoor light, and a cooling system, such as one that utilizes electric fans or misting systems.

18 It is yet another objective of the present invention to provide a modular, electrically 19 powered lawn or patio umbrella in which lighting systems, such as those utilizing cold 20 cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights; cooling systems, such as those utilizing electric 21 fans or misting systems; and motorized retraction systems; can be selectively 22 interchanged.

The above objects are achieved, for example, by integrating a rechargeable power system, a lighting system, a motorized retraction system, and/or a cooling system into a relatively large patio umbrella. The resulting umbrella does not have to be connected to a household electrical system, is a relatively low power consuming device, does not generate much heat, provides a high amount of light intensity, reduces the overall energy consumption of outdoor lighting, allows for fewer batteries to be utilized in each lighting

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 3

fixture, allows for easier recharging of the batteries due to the lower power requirements,
 and allows the utilization of smaller photovoltaic solar cells.

 $t\mathcal{X}$

şt.

à.

÷

3 In the embodiment that utilizes a cold cathode tube, one additional advantage is that 4 the cold cathode tube may be operated at multiple voltage levels to provide differing 5 amounts of light output. In one particular embodiment, a wireless receiver and transmitter 6 pair may be utilized to allow an operator to use a wireless command signal to change the 7 operating state of the lighting system, such as switching the system between an on and off 8 condition, and switching the system between varying levels of light output. Accordingly, an 9 operator may intensify the light output from the lighting system through use of a wireless L10 handheld transmitter when he wants additional light from a particular umbrella.

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 4

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

۴.

1

12 13

[]4

915

α

sı.

The novel features believed characteristic of the invention are set forth in the 2 appended claims. However, the invention itself, as well as a preferred mode of use and 3 4 further objectives and advantages thereof, will best be understood by reference to the following detailed description of the preferred embodiment when read in conjunction with 5 the following drawings. 6

7 Figure 1 is a fragmentary and sectional view of the preferred embodiment of the 8 lighted umbrella with motorized opening and closing system according to the present <u>⊨</u> 9 invention. C10 C11

Figures 2A, 2B, and 2C are pictorial, fragmentary, and section views of an alternate embodiment of the present invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with a stand and a single battery and removable base cover.

Figures 3A, 3B, and 3C are pictorial, fragmentary, and partial section views of another alternate embodiment of the present invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with a stand, charger, batteries, and removable battery cover.

6 Figure 4A is a fragmentary and sectional view of another alternate embodiment of 17 the present invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with recessed lighting.

18 Figure 4B is a fragmentary and sectional view of another alternate embodiment of 19 the present invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with integral misting system.

20 Figure 4C is a fragmentary and sectional view of another alternate embodiment of 21 the present invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with an integral fan system.

22 Figure 5A is a block diagram representation of the motorized opening and closing 23 system of the umbrella of Figure 1 and of the other embodiments of the umbrella of the 24 present invention.

25 Figure 5B is a block diagram representation of an alternate embodiment of the 26 motorized opening and closing system of Figure 5A.

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 5

Figure 6 is a simplified schematic of an alternative embodiment of the present
 invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with a top-mounted power unit and a cold
 cathode tube lighting system.

 α

2.2

÷

C10 G1

12 13

a 4 5

ŗ,

Figure 7 is a simplified schematic of an alternative embodiment of the present invention which is directed to an umbrella with a top-mounted power unit and an electric fan cooling system.

Figure 8 is a simplified view of an alternative embodiment of the present invention
which is directed to an umbrella with a top-mounted power unit and a mist producing
cooling system.

Figure 9 is a simplified schematic of an alternate embodiment of the present invention that is directed to an umbrella with a top-mounted power unit and a motorized opening and closing system.

Figure 10 is a schematic of one broad implementation of the present invention.

Figure 11 is a block diagram representation of the present invention.

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 6

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

3.J.

£

1

2 Referring to Figure 1 in the drawings, one embodiment of an umbrella apparatus according to the present invention is illustrated. Umbrella apparatus 11 includes an 3 4 umbrella portion 13 and a hollow tubular pole portion 15. Pole portion 15 is coupled to 5 and supports umbrella portion 13. Umbrella portion 13 is preferably retractable and 6 may be moved between a raised, or expanded open position, which is shown; and a 7 lowered, or retracted, closed position in which umbrella portion is collapsed down about 8 pole portion 15, as is conventional. A flexible canopy 17 is attached to and covers 9 |-----9 umbrella portion 15. Canopy 17 is supported by a plurality of rib members 19, 21, 23, C10 and 25. Rib members 19, 21, 23, and 25 are preferably hingedly coupled to pole C 1 portion 15 at an upper portion of pole portion 15. An integral lighting system 26 is 42 carried by at least one of rib members 19, 21, 23, or 25. Lighting system 26 provides **f**13 high intensity light to umbrella apparatus 11 and the surrounding area. In the 14 embodiment of Figure 1, lighting system 26 preferably utilizes a cold cathode tube 35 which will be described in greater detail herein.

5]6 Umbrella apparatus 11 may include a base member adapted to receive pole **[**]7 portion 15 and to support umbrella apparatus 11 in a generally upright position. 18 Although not shown in the embodiment Figure 1, other embodiments of the present 19 invention depict a variety of conventional and novel base members, any of which may 20 be utilized with the embodiment of Figure 1. It should be understood that in all of the 21 embodiments of the present invention discussed herein, umbrella apparatus 11 may be 22 used with little or no base member whatsoever, provided there is a table or some other 23 support structure, including the ground, which may be adapted to receive pole portion 24 15. For example, many patio tables are designed with central apertures to receive, 25 support, and stabilize relatively large umbrellas. In some cases, the patio tables 26 eliminate the need for a base member all together.

In accordance with the preferred embodiment of the present invention, light system 26 includes a plurality of light strands 27, 29, 31, and 33 attached to rib members 19, 21, 23, and 25. Each light strand 27, 29, 31, and 33 includes electrical

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 7

wiring 39 which conductively connects a plurality of small cold cathode tube light bulbs together for providing the high intensity light under canopy 17 and in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 11. A wiring ring 37 secures and locates electrical wiring 39 of light strands 27, 29, 31, and 33, so that electrical wiring 39 may be passed through the hollow interior of pole portion 15 to a power source, as will be described in detail below.

4

\$.

α.

2.5

7 Umbrella apparatus 11 includes an optional opening and closing system 40 that 8 aids in expanding umbrella portion 13 into the open condition and retracting umbrella 9 portion 13 into the closed condition. Opening and closing system 40 includes a cable 10 system 41, a gear and pulley system 43 housed in a crank case 44, and a manual crank 45. Crank case 44 is preferably located on pole portion 15 such that crank case 44 is accessible when umbrella portion 13 is in the fully retracted position against pole portion 15. Cable system 41 is coupled between rib members 19, 21, 23, and 25 and gear and pulley system 43, and is preferably disposed within the hollow interior of pole portion 15. 15 []5 Manual crank 45 is coupled to gear and pulley system 43 so as to allow manual opening and closing of umbrella portion 13.

7 Opening and closing system 40 may be automated by the inclusion of an electric 18 screw driver motor 49, or other similar relatively small diameter motor assembly, and 19 one or more operational switches 47. Motor 49 is preferably disposed within the hollow 20 interior of pole portion 15 and is coupled to gear and pulley system 43. Operational 21 switches 47 are preferably carried by crank case 44, and include one or more switches 22 for controlling the operation of motor 49. With the inclusion of motor 49, a user may 23 expand and retract umbrella portion 13 simply by pressing the appropriate operational 24 switch 47. This feature is particularly advantageous when used with large umbrellas 25 which may be relatively heavy and awkward to operate, or when the user lacks 26 sufficient strength to expand or retract umbrella portion 13.

Umbrella apparatus 11 includes a power system 50 having a power source 55.
In this embodiment, power source 55 is preferably disposed in the hollow interior of pole
portion 15 at a lower extremity and comprises one or more rechargeable batteries 55a.

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 8

1 A releasable end cap 57 having integral ground connectors is provided at the lowermost 2 portion of pole portion 15 to complete the electrical circuit of power system 50 and to 3 allow access to rechargeable batteries 55a, as rechargeable batteries 55a may have to 4 be periodically replaced. Power system 50 provides electrical power to lighting system 5 26 and opening and closing system 40. An external power system charger 51 is electrically coupled to power system 50 to aid in repeatedly charging rechargeable 6 batteries 55a. As is shown in Figure 1, an external adapter 60 may be provided. 7 8 External adapter 60 includes a relatively small plug 59 that is adapted to be conductively 9 received by external power system charger 51, an extension cord 61, an electrical 10 transformer 63, and terminals 65 that allow transformer 63 to be plugged into a 1 1 conventional AC wall outlet. This allows power system charger 51 to receive power **a**2 directly from a conventional AC wall outlet in order to recharge rechargeable batteries 55a.

÷

\$

83

5.8

13 14 In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention, an =15 C] ⊓16 alternative power system charger 62 may be provided. Alternate power system charger 62 includes at least one solar cell 35 carried by an upper cap portion 64. Solar cells 35 37 are conductively coupled to power system charger 51 via wires (not shown) that pass 48 through the hollow interior of pole portion 15, thereby allowing solar cells 35 to provide 19 an electrical charge to recharge rechargeable batteries 55a, provided sunlight falls upon 20 solar cells 35. Because solar cells 35 provide continuous recharging throughout the 21 daylight hours, the amount and frequency of charging power system 50 with external 22 power system charger 60 may be minimized. It is important to note that locating 23 alternate power system charger 62 atop umbrella portion 13 is unique and 24 advantageous, particularly when alternate power system charger 62 includes solar cells 25 35 or other types of solar energy collectors. Such location limits the visibility of alternate 26 power system charger 62 and ensures that solar energy collection is maximized.

The embodiment depicted in Figure 1 is advantageous over the prior art in that it provides a number of useful functions. Umbrella apparatus 11 is lighted by lighting system 26 which does not require continuous access to a conventional AC wall outlet, while providing high intensity light. This allows umbrella apparatus 11 to be placed in a

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 9

1 relatively remote lawn or garden locations that are away from, or substantially removed from, conventional AC power outlets. During daylight hours, solar cells 35 provide a 2 3 continuous trickle charge to recharge rechargeable batteries 55a, thereby reducing the 4 need for and frequency of use of external power system charger 60. However, when an electrical charge is needed, external power system charger 60 may be utilized to 5 6 directly charge power system charger 51. Of course, a conventional extension cord 7 may be used, thereby eliminating the need to move umbrella apparatus 11 from its 8 remote location to a location near an AC power outlet.

12

Ţ.\$.

9 Referring now to Figures 2A-2C in the drawings, another embodiment of the **⊾10** present invention is illustrated. In this embodiment, an umbrella apparatus 111 includes **41** an umbrella portion 113, a pole portion 115, a stand portion 118, and a base portion 120 12 adapted to house a rechargeable power system 151. Umbrella apparatus 11 includes a 13 lighting system 126 and may include a motorized opening and closing system 140. 14 15 Umbrella portion 113 is preferably retractable and may be moved between a raised, or expanded open position, which is shown; and a lowered, or retracted, closed position in 6 which umbrella portion is collapsed down about pole portion 115, as is conventional. A [7 flexible canopy 117 is attached to and covers umbrella portion 115. Canopy 117 is **C18** supported by a plurality of rib members 119, 121, 123, and 125. Rib members 119, 19 121, 123, and 125 are preferably hingedly coupled to pole portion 115 at an upper 20 portion of pole portion 115. An integral lighting system 126 is carried by at least one of 21 rib members 119, 121, 123, or 125. Lighting system 126 provides high intensity light to umbrella apparatus 111 and the surrounding area. In the embodiment of Figures 2A-22 23 2C, lighting system 126 preferably utilizes a cold cathode tube which will be described in 24 greater detail herein.

Lighting system 126 includes a plurality of light strands 127, 129, 131, and 133 attached to rib members 119, 121, 123, and 125. Each light strand 127, 129, 131, and 133 includes electrical wiring 139 which conductively couples a plurality of small cold cathode tube light bulbs together for providing the high intensity light under canopy 117 and in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 111. A wiring ring 137 secures and locates electrical wiring 139 of light strands 127, 129, 131, and 133, so that electrical

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 10

wiring 139 may be passed through the hollow interior of pole portion 115 to a power 1 2 source, as will be described in detail below.

ŕŤ

. Lt

.

đ

s

3 Umbrella apparatus 111 includes an optional opening and closing system 140 that aids in expanding umbrella portion 113 into the open condition and retracting 4 umbrella portion 113 into the closed condition. Opening and closing system 140 5 includes a cable system 141, a gear and pulley system 143 housed in a crank case 144, 6 and a manual crank 145. Crank case 144 is preferably located on pole portion 115 7 such that crank case 144 is accessible when umbrella portion 113 is in the fully 8 9 retracted position against pole portion 115. Cable system 141 is coupled between rib 10 members 119, 121, 123, and 125 and gear and pulley system 143, and is preferably 91 disposed within the hollow interior of pole portion 115. Manual crank 145 is coupled to ¢12 gear and pulley system 143 so as to allow manual opening and closing of umbrella 13 portion 113.

14 Opening and closing system 140 may be automated by the inclusion of an 15 electric screw driver motor 149, or other similar relatively small diameter motor 96 assembly, and one or more operational switches 147. Motor 149 is preferably disposed **C17** within the hollow interior of pole portion 115 and is coupled to gear and pulley system 18 143. Operational switches 147 are preferably carried by crank case 144, and include 19 one or more switches for controlling the operation of motor 149. With the inclusion of 20 motor 149, a user may expand and retract umbrella portion 113 simply by pressing the 21 appropriate operational switch 147. This feature is particularly advantageous when 22 used with large umbrellas which may be relatively heavy and awkward to operate, or 23 when the user lacks sufficient strength to expand or retract umbrella portion 113.

24 Umbrella apparatus 111 includes a power system 150 having a power source 25 155. In this embodiment, power source 155 is preferably adapted to be conductively coupled to base portion 120 and comprises a rechargeable battery pack 155a, 26 preferably an 18-Volt rechargeable battery pack. Battery pack 155a is preferably the 27 type of rechargeable battery that is utilized with most modern cordless power tools, 28 29 such as drills, saws, and sanders. Battery pack 155a is adapted to be repeatedly

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 11

recharged by plugging battery pack 155a into a conventional charger (not shown) that is
 plugged into a conventional AC power outlet. Power system 150 provides electrical
 power to lighting system 126 and opening and closing system 140.

¢τ.

5.8

٩.

s.

In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention, an 4 alternative power system charger 162 may be provided. Alternate power system 5 charger 162 includes at least one solar cell 135 carried by an upper cap portion 164. 6 Solar cells 135 are conductively coupled to power system 150 via wires (not shown) that 7 pass through the hollow interior of pole portion 115, thereby allowing solar cells 135 to 8 provide an electrical charge to recharge rechargeable battery pack 155a, provided 9 10 sunlight falls upon solar cells 135. Because solar cells 135 provide continuous ា ្រា2 recharging throughout the daylight hours, the frequency with which battery pack 155a must be replaced or recharged may be minimized. It is important to note that locating 13 alternate power system charger 162 atop umbrella portion 113 is unique and advantageous, particularly when alternate power system charger 162 includes solar 44 15 cells 135 or other types of solar energy collectors. Such location limits the visibility of 16 alternate power system charger 162 and ensures that solar energy collection is 17 maximized. Ľ.

Stand portion 118 includes an upright shaft portion 170 having a central aperture 19 172 that is adapted to receive the pole portion 115 of umbrella apparatus 111. A 20 plurality of screw clamps 174 and 176 are provided to secure pole portion 115 within 21 shaft portion 170. A bottom portion 146 is provided to stabilize umbrella apparatus 111 22 while umbrella apparatus 111 is installed within stand portion 118.

Base portion 120 includes a removable cylindrical sleeve 156, a removable cover 160, and a receiver 168. Sleeve 156 is configured to slip over the exterior of shaft portion 170, and includes a longitudinal slot 158 that allows access to screw clamps 174 and 176 when sleeve 156 is placed over shaft portion 170. Slot 158 also allows access to a connector 166 disposed in the lower portion of pole portion 115 when sleeve 156 is placed over shaft portion 170. Connector 166 is conductively coupled to the wires from alternate power system charger 162 and solar cells 135. Cover 160 is preferably

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 12

1 concave in shape, thereby defining an interior space which may be used to house the 2 electronics (not shown) of power system 150. Cover 160 may include one or more 3 seams 162 that allow access to the interior space defined by cover 160. Receiver 168 4 releasably receives battery pack 155a. A wire 152 and plug 154 conductively couple 5 battery pack 155a to connector 166, thereby providing an electrical circuit between 6 rechargeable battery pack 155a and light strands 119, 121, 123, and 125 of lighting 7 system 126.

τi τ.

ş.

5.9.

The embodiment depicted in Figures 2A-2C is advantageous over the prior art in 8 9 that it provides a number of useful functions. Umbrella apparatus 111 is lighted by **|**10 lighting system 126 which does not require continuous access to a conventional AC wall 1 12 13 13 4 outlet, while providing high intensity light. This allows umbrella apparatus 111 to be placed in a relatively remote lawn or garden locations that are away from, or substantially removed from, conventional AC power outlets. During daylight hours, solar cells 135 provide a continuous trickle charge to recharge rechargeable battery ≞15 [] []6 pack 155a, thereby reducing the frequency with which battery pack 155a must be replaced or recharged. Additionally, this embodiment is advantageous over the prior art **[**]7 in that conventional rechargeable battery packs, which are commonly used with **[**]8 cordless power tools, may be utilized. If battery pack 155a is insufficiently charged 19 illuminate light strands 119, 121, 123, and 125 of light system 126, the user may simply 20 replace battery pack 155a with another fully charged battery pack 155a. In this manner, 21 lighting system 126 of umbrella apparatus 111 may be energized conveniently, even 22 though umbrella apparatus 111 may be located extremely remotely from an AC power 23 outlet, such as in a garden patio, or on a boat dock. In this embodiment, there is no 24 need to use extension cords to charge an alternate power system charger.

Referring now to Figures 3A-3C in the drawings, another embodiment of the present invention is illustrated. In this embodiment, an umbrella apparatus 211 includes an umbrella portion 213, a pole portion 215, a stand portion 218, and a base portion 220 adapted to house a rechargeable power system 251. Umbrella apparatus 211 includes a lighting system 226 and may include a motorized opening and closing system 240. Umbrella portion 213 is preferably retractable and may be moved between a raised, or

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 13

expanded open position, which is shown; and a lowered, or retracted, closed position in 1 2 which umbrella portion is collapsed down about pole portion 215, as is conventional. A 3 flexible canopy 217 is attached to and covers umbrella portion 215. Canopy 217 is supported by a plurality of rib members 219, 221, 223, and 225. Rib members 219, 4 221, 223, and 225 are preferably hingedly coupled to pole portion 215 at an upper 5 6 portion of pole portion 215. An integral lighting system 226 is carried by at least one of 7 rib members 219, 221, 223, or 225. Lighting system 226 provides high intensity light to 8 umbrella apparatus 211 and the surrounding area. In the embodiment of Figures 3A-9 3C, lighting system 226 preferably utilizes a cold cathode tube which will be described in _10 ⊨∔ greater detail herein.

۶.

s.

C 1.

. **5** A

Lighting system 226 includes a plurality of light strands 227, 229, 231, and 233 attached to rib members 219, 221, 223, and 225. Each light strand 227, 229, 231, and 233 includes electrical wiring 239 which conductively couples a plurality of small cold cathode tube light bulbs together for providing the high intensity light under canopy 217 and in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 211. A wiring ring 237 secures and locates electrical wiring 239 of light strands 227, 229, 231, and 233, so that electrical wiring 239 may be passed through the hollow interior of pole portion 215 to a power source, as will be described in detail below.

19 Umbrella apparatus 211 includes an optional opening and closing system 240 20 that aids in expanding umbrella portion 213 into the open condition and retracting 21 umbrella portion 213 into the closed condition. Opening and closing system 240 22 includes a cable system 241, a gear and pulley system 243 housed in a crank case 244, 23 and a manual crank 245. Crank case 244 is preferably located on pole portion 215 24 such that crank case 244 is accessible when umbrella portion 213 is in the fully 25 retracted position against pole portion 215. Cable system 241 is coupled between rib 26 members 219, 221, 223, and 225 and gear and pulley system 243, and is preferably 27 disposed within the hollow interior of pole portion 215. Manual crank 245 is coupled to 28 gear and pulley system 243 so as to allow manual opening and closing of umbrella 29 portion 213.

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 14

Opening and closing system 240 may be automated by the inclusion of an 1 electric screw driver motor 249, or other similar relatively small diameter motor 2 assembly, and one or more operational switches 247. Motor 249 is preferably disposed 3 within the hollow interior of pole portion 215 and is coupled to gear and pulley system 4 243. Operational switches 247 are preferably carried by crank case 244, and include 5 one or more switches for controlling the operation of motor 249. With the inclusion of 6 motor 249, a user may expand and retract umbrella portion 213 simply by pressing the 7 appropriate operational switch 247. This feature is particularly advantageous when 8 used with large umbrellas which may be relatively heavy and awkward to operate, or 9 when the user lacks sufficient strength to expand or retract umbrella portion 213. 10

4

r 1

£

i.

s,

日1 月2 Umbrella apparatus 211 includes a power system 250 having a rechargeable power source 255. In this embodiment, power source 255 is preferably adapted to be 13 conductively coupled to and hosed within base portion 220 and comprises a bundle of rechargeable batteries 255a. Power system 250 provides electrical power to lighting **H**4 ⁴15 system 226 and opening and closing system 240. An external power system charger 6 and transformer 251 is electrically coupled to power system 250 to aid in repeatedly charging rechargeable batteries 255a. An extension cord 261 having terminals 265 617 ۱. 18 allow external power system charger and transformer 251 to be plugged into a 19 This allows external power system charger and conventional AC wall outlet. transformer 251 to receive power directly from a conventional AC wall outlet in order to 20 recharge rechargeable batteries 255a. 21

In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention, an 22 alternative power system charger 262 may be provided. Alternate power system 23 charger 262 includes at least one solar cell 235 carried by an upper cap portion 264. 24 Solar cells 235 are conductively coupled to power system 250 via wires (not shown) that 25 pass through the hollow interior of pole portion 215, thereby allowing solar cells 235 to 26 provide an electrical charge to recharge rechargeable batteries 255a, provided sunlight 27 falls upon solar cells 235. Because solar cells 235 provide continuous recharging 28 throughout the daylight hours, the frequency with which batteries 255a must be 29 replaced or recharged may be minimized. It is important to note that locating alternate 30

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 15

power system charger 262 atop umbrella portion 213 is unique and advantageous,
particularly when alternate power system charger 262 includes solar cells 235 or other
types of solar energy collectors. Such location limits the visibility of alternate power
system charger 262 and ensures that solar energy collection is maximized.

¢

Å.

£.X

2.9.

5 Stand portion 218 includes an upright shaft portion 270 having a central aperture 6 272 that is adapted to receive pole portion 215 of umbrella apparatus 211. A plurality of 7 screw clamps 274 and 276 are provided to secure pole portion 215 within shaft portion 8 270. A bottom portion 246 is provided to stabilize umbrella apparatus 211 while 9 umbrella apparatus 211 is installed within stand portion 218.

G10 Base portion 220 includes a removable cylindrical sleeve 256, a removable cover ជា ្នា1 260, and recessed portions 280 and 282. Sleeve 256 is configured to slip over the 12 13 exterior of shaft portion 270, and includes a longitudinal slot 258 that allows access to screw clamps 274 and 276 when sleeve 256 is placed over shaft portion 270. Slot 258 . ⊫14 also allows access to a connector 266 disposed in the lower portion of pole portion 215 5 when sleeve 256 is placed over shaft portion 270. Connector 266 is conductively **G**6 coupled to the wires from alternate power system charger 262 and solar cells 235. \| []7 Cover 260 is preferably concave in shape, thereby defining an interior space which may 18 be used to house the electronics (not shown) of power system 250. Cover 260 may include one or more seams 262 that allow access to the interior space defined by cover 19 260. Recessed portion 280 releasably receives batteries 255a, and recessed porti9n 20 282 releasably receives external power system charger 251. A wire 252 and plug 254 21 conductively couple batteries 255a to connector 266, thereby providing an electrical 22 circuit between rechargeable batteries 255a and light strands 219, 221, 223, and 225 of 23 24 lighting system 226.

The embodiment depicted in Figures 3A-3C is advantageous over the prior art in that it provides a number of useful functions. Umbrella apparatus 211 is lighted by lighting system 226 which does not require continuous access to a conventional AC wall outlet, while providing high intensity light. This allows umbrella apparatus 211 to be placed in a relatively remote lawn or garden locations that are away from, or

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 16

substantially removed from, conventional AC power outlets. During daylight hours, solar cells 235 provide a continuous trickle charge to recharge rechargeable batteries 255a, thereby reducing the frequency with which batteries 255a must be replaced or recharged. However, when an electrical charge is needed, external power system charger 251 may be utilized to directly charge batteries 255a. Of course, a conventional extension cord may be used, thereby eliminating the need to move umbrella apparatus 211 from its remote location to a location near an AC power outlet.

14

5.1

*

s,

Referring now to Figure 4A in the drawings, the preferred embodiment of lighting 8 systems 26, 126, and 226 of the present invention is illustrated. In this embodiment, a 9 plurality of lighting elements 307, preferably cold cathode tube bulbs, are recessed into **⊨**¶0 1 a rib member 301. Rib member 301 is indicative of rib members 19, 21, 23, 25, 119, **]**2 121, 123, 125, 219, 221, 223, and 225. As is shown, a cavity 303 is formed within rib 301. Cavity 303 is adapted to receive and hold light bulb 307. A translucent material -33 **1**4 305 extends along the entire length of the cavity 303 to protect bulbs 307 from damage and undesirable exposure to weather and other conditions. Translucent material 305 15 C may have a smooth surface or be textured to accentuate or enhance the light from 1.16 C17 bulbs 307. Although only a single cold cathode tube bulb 307 is illustrated, it should be -18 understood that there may be many bulbs 307 spaced along the length of rib member 301 to illuminate the area under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. Rib member 301 19 includes a wiring channel 309 configured to receive a wire 311 that conductively 20 connects all of the bulbs 307 installed in rib member 301, thereby forming an electrical 21 circuit between bulbs 307 and the rechargeable power source, such as power sources 22 50, 150, and 250. In this manner, recessed lighting, which is carried entirely within rib 23 member 301 and is not otherwise exposed to the elements, is achieved. 24

Referring now to Figure 4B in the drawings, an alternate embodiment of lighting systems 26, 126, and 226 of the present invention is illustrated. This embodiment is similar to the embodiment of Figure 4A, with the exception that an integral cooling system 410 has been added. In this embodiment, a plurality of lighting elements 307, preferably cold cathode tube bulbs, are recessed into a rib member 301. Rib member 301 is indicative of rib members 19, 21, 23, 25, 119, 121, 123, 125, 219, 221, 223, and

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 17

225. Cooling system 410 comprises a misting means that provides a light mist to cool 1 the area under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. A cavity 403 is formed within rib 2 member 401. Cavity 403 is adapted to receive and hold light bulb 407. A translucent 3 material 405 extends along the entire length of the cavity 403 to protect bulbs 407 from 4 damage and undesirable exposure to weather and other conditions. Translucent 5 material 405 may have a smooth surface or be textured to accentuate or enhance the 6 light from bulbs 407. Although only a single cold cathode tube bulb 407 is illustrated, it 7 8 should be understood that there may be many bulbs 407 spaced along the length of rib 9 member 401 to illuminate the area under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. Rib member 401 includes a wiring channel 409 configured to receive a wire 411 that **C**11 conductively connects all of the bulbs 407 installed in rib member 401, thereby forming C 12 an electrical circuit between bulbs 407 and the rechargeable power source, such as 四 13 114 power sources 50, 150, and 250. In this manner, recessed lighting, which is carried entirely within rib member 401 and is not otherwise exposed to the elements, is 15 achieved.

4,8

CX.

a Fi 116 A fluid supply channel 421 is provided in order to receive a fluid tight hose which ្ឋ 17 supplies water to a plurality of misting nozzles 425 which generate mist 427 and 480. A 18 fluid discharge channel 423 is provided to carry a fluid tight hose which carries water 19 from the hose in fluid supply channel 421 to misting nozzles 425. In this embodiment, 20 umbrella apparatus should include a small reservoir (not shown) of water or other water 21 source, such as an inlet hose, and an electric pump to pressurize and pump the water through cooling system 410. In this manner, umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211 22 23 provides both light and a cooling mist to those in close proximity.

Referring now to Figure 4C in the drawings, another embodiment of lighting systems 26, 126, and 226 of the present invention is illustrated. This embodiment is similar to the embodiment of Figure 4A, with the exception that a different integral cooling system 510 has been added. In this embodiment, a plurality of lighting elements 507, preferably cold cathode tube bulbs, are recessed into a rib member 501. Rib member 501 is indicative of rib members 19, 21, 23, 25, 119, 121, 123, 125, 219, 221, 223, and 225. Cooling system 510 comprises a fanning means that provides a

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 18

cool breeze under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. A cavity 503 is formed within rib 1 member 501. Cavity 503 is adapted to receive and hold light bulb 507. A translucent 2 material 505 extends along the entire length of the cavity 503 to protect bulbs 507 from 3 damage and undesirable exposure to weather and other conditions. Translucent 4 material 505 may have a smooth surface or be textured to accentuate or enhance the 5 light from bulbs 507. Although only a single cold cathode tube bulb 507 is illustrated, it 6 should be understood that there may be many bulbs 507 spaced along the length of rib 7 member 501 to illuminate the area under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. Rib 8 member 501 includes a wiring channel 509 configured to receive a wire 511 that 9 conductively connects all of the bulbs 507 installed in rib member 501, thereby forming 10 1 1 an electrical circuit between bulbs 507 and the rechargeable power source, such as **a**2 power sources 50, 150, and 250. In this manner, recessed lighting, which is carried entirely within rib member 501 and is not otherwise exposed to the elements, is ŭ13 **1**4 achieved.

ç x

5

A wiring conduit 520 is provided which routes electrical wiring from wire 511 to an electric motor 524 carried in a recessed cavity 522. Fanning means 528 and 580, such as fan blades, are carried by rotating shafts 530 which are connected to motors 524. When energized, motors 524 rotate fan blades 528 and 580, thereby providing a cooling breeze under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, and 211. A plurality of fan blade sets 528 and 580 may be located at predetermined locations along the length of rib member 501.

Referring now to Figure 5A in the drawings, a block diagram representation of 21 the preferred embodiment of opening and closing systems 40, 140, and 240 is 22 illustrated. As is shown, a pulley system 600 is coupled through gears 602 to an electric 23 motor 604. A switch 606 is electrically connected between a power supply 608 and 24 electric motor 604. Power supply 608 is indicative of rechargeable power systems 50, 25 150, and 250. External power system charger 610 and solar charger 612 are coupled 26 to power supply 608 to recharge the rechargeable battery elements. External power 27 system charger 610 is indicative of external power system chargers 51 and 251. Solar 28 charger 612 is indicative of alternate power system chargers 62, 162, and 262. 29 Mechanical actuation of switch 606 allows current to flow from power supply 608 to 30

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 19

electric motor 604. Motor 604 works through gears 602 to operate pulley 600, thereby
 opening and closing canopy 17, 117, or 217 of umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211,
 respectively.

5.1

×

ŝ

Referring now to Figure 5B in the drawings, another embodiment of the opening 4 and closing systems 40, 140, and 240 of the present invention is illustrated. In this 5 embodiment, a wireless transmitter 708 is utilized to transmit encoded signals and 6 remotely communicate with a wireless receiver 706 that is carried by umbrella 7 apparatus 11, 111, or 211, preferably near housings 44, 144, and 244. A decoder 704 8 is provided to decode the encoded signals. As is conventional with such receivers and 9 transmitters, transmitter 708 and receiver 706 may be adapted to be coded on a) 이 1 particular frequency or coding scheme which enable a dedicated transmitter 708 to ្ឋ<u>ា</u>2 actuate a particular receiver 706. A decoder 704 coupled to an electrical switch 702 13 serves to allow for such identification. Switch 702 controls the application of electrical energy from a power supply 710 to an electric motor 700. Power supply 710 is indicative 44 _15 of rechargeable power systems 50, 150, and 250. Motor 700 is indicative of motors 49, 149, and 249. In this manner, a motorized retraction system may be actuated remotely **[**]6 -17 utilizing wireless transmitter 708.

^{n_}18 Referring now to Figures 6-9 in the drawings, the preferred embodiments of the umbrella apparatus of the present invention are illustrated. In these embodiments, the 19 rechargeable power source and solar recharging system are mounted atop the pole 20 portion of the umbrella apparatus above the canopy. One concept which runs 21 throughout the embodiments depicted in Figures 6-9 is the utilization of a "power unit." 22 This concept involves the placement of a unitary structure at a defined location relative 23 to the umbrella. For example, in the embodiments of Figures 6-9, the power unit is 24 shown at a top location directly above the umbrella apparatus, and secured to the pole 25 portion with a threaded coupling. Figure 6 depicts a top-mounted power unit and a cold 26 cathode tube lighting system. Figure 7 depicts a top-mounted power unit with a fanning 27 means cooling system. Figure 8 depicts a top-mounted power unit with mist producing 28 cooling system. Figure 9 depicts a top-mounted power unit with an automated opening 29 and closing system. 30

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 20

Although Figures 6-9 depict power units with a single electrical system, it should 1 be understood that in alternative embodiments, one could mix and match these 2 electrical subassemblies such that a single power unit provides electrical power to two 3 or more subassemblies. For example, an umbrella apparatus may include a lighting 4 system and either one or both of the cooling systems described above. Alternatively, an 5 umbrella apparatus may include a lighting system, a cooling system, and an automated 6 opening and closing system as described herein. In this manner, the umbrella 7 apparatus of the present invention is modular such that the different subsystems can be 8 9 easily mixed and matched.

- 4.t

3. X

÷.

This modularity allows one to manufacture and sell aftermarket kits which can be 10 **G1** installed and interchanged by the umbrella owners. Such kits may include a power unit and one or more of the subsystems, such as a lighting system and/or a cooling system and/or an automated opening and closing system. Because the power unit is relatively self-contained, little interaction is required to attach the power unit to an umbrella apparatus. Alternatively, this modularity in design facilitates the mass manufacture of ∎15 [] 16 umbrellas, allowing the electrical system to be manufactured by one factory, and the **]**7 umbrella systems, which do not include electrical systems, to be manufactured by a **[**]8 different factory. The parts can then be brought together in an assembly area and 19 assembled together.

Referring now specifically to Figure 6, an umbrella apparatus 701 is illustrated. 20 As is shown, a power unit 725 is provided for connection to the uppermost portion of 21 umbrella apparatus 701. In this embodiment, a cold cathode tube light subassembly 22 721 is provided for connection at a different location to umbrella apparatus 701. Power 23 unit 725 includes a solar collector 727 at its uppermost portion. Solar collector 727 is 24 preferably carried by a top portion 703 of power unit 725. A bottom portion 705 of 25 power unit 725 defines an interior battery compartment 707. Additionally, power unit 26 725 carries a coupling mechanism 729 to allow coupling between power unit 725 and a 27 pole portion 719 of umbrella apparatus 701, pole portion 719 being adapted at an upper 28 end 711, preferably with threads 713, to releasably receive power unit 725. A top cap 29 715 hingedly connects pole portion 719 to a canopy 717. Cold cathode tube light 30

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 21

subassembly 721 is coupled at a desired location underneath canopy 717 to provide 1 high intensity light in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 701. Cold cathode tube 2 light subassembly 721 is conductively coupled to power unit 725 by wiring 709 that 3 passes through the hollow interior of pole portion 719. Such light allows users to read, 4 play games, or perform other leisure activities that require a relatively high intensity 5 light. The electrical components of umbrella apparatus 701 are entirely independent of 6 any household electrical system. The power source, such as power sources 50, 150, 7 and 250, carried by power unit 725 is utilized to energize cold cathode tube light 8 subassembly 721. During daylight hours, solar energy is collected by solar panel 727 9 and is converted and utilized to recharge the rechargeable power source which is **[**]1 maintained within battery compartment 707.

۹.

٤,

r.

ា<u>ខ</u>ា2 Cold cathode tube light subassembly 721 is described below in more detail 月3 日 日 日 日 below. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, other low power lighting systems may be used instead of cold cathode tube light sub assembly 721. For _15 example, an LED or fluorescent lighting subassembly may be utilized instead. LED and fluorescent systems designed for use with solar and low voltage lighting are known in 116 ្ឋ ្ហា7 the art. Such alternative lighting sources may be easily used with the present system in **5**18 manners which are recognized by those skilled in the art. Implementation of LED, fluorescent, or other alternate light sources instead of cold cathode tube light 19 subassembly 721 is a straightforward and need not be further described in detail. 20

Referring now specifically to Figure 7 in the drawings, an umbrella apparatus 801 21 is illustrated. As is shown, a power unit 825 is provided for connection to the uppermost 22 portion of umbrella apparatus 801. In this embodiment, a cooling system 821 23 24 comprising a fanning means 831 is provided for connection at a different location to umbrella apparatus 801. Power unit 825 includes a solar collector 827 at its uppermost 25 portion. Solar collector 827 is preferably carried by a top portion 803 of power unit 825. 26 A bottom portion 805 of power unit 825 defines an interior battery compartment 807. 27 Additionally, power unit 825 carries a coupling mechanism 829 to allow coupling 28 between power unit 825 and a pole portion 819 of umbrella apparatus 801, pole portion 29 819 being adapted at an upper end 811, preferably with threads 813, to releasably 30

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 22

receive power unit 825. A top cap 815 hingedly connects pole portion 819 to a canopy 1 2 817. Cooling system 821 is coupled at a desired location underneath canopy 817 to provide a cooling breeze in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 801. Cooling 3 system 821 is conductively coupled to power unit 825 by wiring 809 that passes through 4 the hollow interior of pole portion 819. The electrical components of umbrella apparatus 5 801 are entirely independent of any household electrical system. The power source, 6 7 such as power sources 50, 150, and 250, carried by power unit 825 is utilized to 8 energize cooling system 821. During daylight hours, solar energy is collected by solar 9 panel 827 and is converted and utilized to recharge the rechargeable power source 10 which is maintained within battery compartment 807.

۶

ia ii

s.

2.2

£.).

1 Referring now specifically to Figure 8 in the drawings, an umbrella apparatus 901 12 13 is illustrated. As is shown, a power unit 955 is provided for connection to the uppermost portion of umbrella apparatus 901. In this embodiment, a cooling system 921 4 comprising a misting system 931 is provided for connection at a different location to -15 [] []6 umbrella apparatus 901. Power unit 955 includes a solar collector 957 at its uppermost portion. Solar collector 957 is preferably carried by a top portion 903 of power unit 955. 37 A bottom portion 905 of power unit 955 defines an interior battery compartment 907. **a**8 Additionally, power unit 955 carries a coupling mechanism 959 to allow coupling آبا 19 between power unit 955 and a pole portion 919 of umbrella apparatus 901, pole portion 20 919 being adapted at an upper end 911, preferably with threads 913, to releasably 21 receive power unit 955. A top cap 915 hingedly connects pole portion 919 to a canopy 22 917. The electrical components of umbrella apparatus 901 are entirely independent of 23 any household electrical system. The power source, such as power sources 50, 150, 24 and 250, carried by power unit 955 is utilized to energize cooling system 921. During 25 daylight hours, solar energy is collected by solar panel 957 and is converted and utilized to recharge the rechargeable power source which is maintained within battery 26 27 compartment 907.

Cooling system 921 is coupled at a desired location underneath canopy 917 to provide a cooling mist in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 901. Cooling system 921 is conductively coupled to power unit 955 by wiring 909 that passes through the

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 23

hollow interior of pole portion 919. Cooling system 921 is a misting system comprising a reservoir 925, or other water source, a pump 927, water feed lines 929, and mist nozzles 923. Pump 927 pressurizes and pumps the water from reservoir 925 through water feed lines 929 and out of mist nozzles 923, which are located at selected spaced intervals under canopy 917, at a selected flow rate. Reservoir 925 may be a conventional ice cooler, such that the mist is chilled water.

ŧ

۲.

x X

4.8

Referring now specifically to Figure 9 in the drawings, an umbrella apparatus 7 1001 is illustrated. As is shown, a power unit 1055 is utilized to provide electrical power 8 to an automated opening and closing system 1050. Power unit 1055 includes a solar 9 년0 대1 collector 1027 at its uppermost portion. Solar collector 1027 is preferably carried by a top portion 1003 of power unit 1055. A bottom portion 1005 of power unit 1055 defines ō12 an interior battery compartment 1007. Additionally, power unit 1055 carries a coupling 13 mechanism 1029 to allow coupling between power unit 1055 and a pole portion 1019 of umbrella apparatus 1001, pole portion 1019 being adapted at an upper end 1011. -14 <u>_</u>15 preferably with threads 1013, to releasably receive power unit 1055. A top cap 1015 **1**6 hingedly connects pole portion 1019 to a canopy 1017. The electrical components of umbrella apparatus 1001 are entirely independent of any household electrical system. 17 Automated opening and closing system 1050 is conductively coupled to power unit 1055 18 by wiring 1009 that passes through the hollow interior of pole portion 1019. The power 19 source, such as power sources 50, 150, and 250, carried by power unit 1055 is utilized 20 to energize automated opening and closing system 1050. During daylight hours, solar 21 energy is collected by solar panel 1027 and is converted and utilized to recharge the 22 rechargeable power source which is maintained within battery compartment 1007. 23

Automated opening and closing system 1050 is carried at the uppermost portion of pole portion 1019. Opening and closing system 1050 includes a motor 1021, a transmission 1023, a line winding shaft 1025, a pulley system 1031, and a cable system 1033. These components cooperate to open and close the umbrella in response to the receipt of a command signal. The command signal may be supplied by the actuation of a switch (see Figures 1-3) carried on pole portion 1019, or it may be a wireless signal received from a paired transmitter receiver system (see Figure 5B).

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 24

Referring now to Figure 10 in the drawings, a schematic of the cold cathode tube 1 lighting system of the present invention is illustrated. The invention is to utilize in 2 combination a cold cathode lamp, a power inverter which supplies alternating current to the 3 cold cathode lamp, a rechargeable DC battery pack, and a solar collector. This is depicted 4 in simplified form in Figure 10. This may be utilized in any outdoor application in which 5 there is no easy or convenient access to household power. The system is entirely self-6 contained and does not require any household power for operation, or charging. As is 7 shown, the cold cathode tube lighting system 3000 includes a cold cathode lamp 3001 that 8 is supplied with AC power from a power inverter 3007. A DC battery pack 3003 includes 9 rechargeable batteries that supply DC current to power inverter 3007. A solar collector _10 C]1 C]2 3005 is provided to recharge the batteries contained within DC power pack 3003.

÷

\$

3.7

5.2

A cold cathode tube is a lamp that produces light by the passage of an electric current through a vapor or gas maintained within a tube. A cold cathode tube does not require any heating above ambient temperature to produce light. The tube is phosphor coated on its inner surface, and thus may emit various colored light. In most cases, cold cathode tube lamps are low-pressure mercury vapor lamps. Such lamps use a 253.7 nanometer ultraviolet emission from mercury vapor excited by an electrical discharge through the lamp to charge the phosphors maintained on the wall of the lamp.

The optimum operating temperature for cold cathode tube is approximately 40 19 degrees Celsius, although Applicant believes that these lamps can be produced in a 20 manner to reliably provide outdoor lighting in temperatures as cold as 15 degrees 21 Fahrenheit. While the cold cathode tube does not require heating, the output of the lamp 22 does vary based upon the ambient temperature. At room temperature, the initial output of 23 a lamp is only about seventy percent of its steady state value at 40 degrees Celsius. In 24 contrast, its output is only 25 percent when the lamp is started at zero degrees Celsius. 25 Cold starts do require additional voltage from the power source to ensure reliable 26 operation. However, the number of lamp "starts" has no adverse effect on the lamp. This 27 is not true for fluorescent lamps, which degrade over time due to the number of "starts." 28 Cold cathode tubes may be utilized to supply a white light output. 29

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 25

1 In the preferred embodiment, a cold cathode tube manufactured by Nanjing Lampus 2 Electronics Company, Ltd. is utilized. Specifically, a lamp type CFL-20 is utilized. This has 3 an inner diameter of 1.5 millimeters. The tube length is variable, and may be anywhere in 4 the range of 50 millimeters to 30 millimeters in overall length. The tube is adapted to 5 operate on four milliamps of tube current. The tube voltage is in the range of 200 to 750 6 Volts. The average brightness of this particular tube is 40,000 cd/m².

3,6

3.7

¢

W.

\$.

Another advantage of cold cathode tubes is that the tubes can be very thin in diameter. For example, in the preferred implementation, the cold cathode tube may be one or two millimeters in diameter. A cold cathode tube can be bent into any shape and can be formed in very long lengths, such as several feet long. Thus, cold cathode tubes provide greater light output per foot versus conventional lighting.

Another significant advantage of cold cathode tubes it that they have relatively long lamp life. It is not unusual to have lamp lives which are thirty to forty thousand hours of use. In other words, these cold cathode tubes have, for all practical purposes, an infinite life span.

They are low power devices. They do not generate a lot of heat. They provide high lumen output. For these reasons, fewer batteries are needed to drive the cold cathode ray tube, and smaller solar cell panels may be utilized to recharge the batteries. In other words, relatively small form factors can be achieved because the solar cells, the batteries, and the bulbs can be relatively small in size.

The present invention can be implemented on a small, medium, or large scale so the solar cell panels and batteries may be moved up in size to either provide greater light output or to provide for a longer useful life.

Additionally, the present invention may be considered to satisfy three separate and distinct outdoor lighting applications, all of which may be incorporated into the umbrella apparatus of the present invention.

The first application is that of a "special purpose light," or "task light," such as for security applications. These special purpose lights would provide very light output, for a

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 26

relatively short duration. One example would be the utilization of the cold cathode ray tube to provide extremely high light output for a very small area for a very short time, all in response to detection of motion in a particular area. For example, a system can be configured to detect motion in a doorway, motion in a yard, motion in a driveway, or the like. The brightness can be provided which can be far in excess of 40,000 cd/m². For example, 100,000 to 200,000 cd/ m² may be provided for a very small area for a very short duration. For example, the duration may be a few minutes to ten minutes.

ŝ

s.

a.e

Χĵ,

8 The second application requires a medium amount of light output, but requires 9 longer periods of operation or wider areas of coverage. For example, the light assembly 10 provided with the umbrella provides a relatively high light output, such as in the range of 1 20,000 to 100,000 cd/m², in order to allow one to read, play games, operate a computer, or 12 do needlework under the umbrella. Preferably, the battery pack and associated solar panel 13 is sufficient to allow the system to operate continuously for a time interval in the range of 8-14 hours. Additionally, and preferably, the solar panel should be of the size and output 15 which is sufficient to fully recharge the battery pack during the daylight hours. 16 A third application requires a lower level of light intensity. A good example would be

A third application requires a lower level of light intensity. A good example would be lawn, patio, walkway, or landscape lighting. One does not ordinarily expect to be able to read or do intricate work under this type of lighting. In contrast, all that is expected is that a reasonable amount of light be provided to allow one to walk safely through an area. This type of task may require brightness in the range of 6,000 cd/m² to 60,000 cd/m².

Referring now to Figure 11 in the drawings, a block diagram representation of the 21 22 application of the present invention to a lawn lighting scenario is illustrated. In this 23 scenario, a plurality of solar panels 4001, 4003, 4005, and 4007 are connected together in 24 series. Preferably, solar panels 4001, 4003, 4005, and 4007 are manufactured by Siemens and comprise mono-crystal solar panels, each providing 1.5 Volts. The total 25 26 current for the array of solar panels is about 80 milliamps. The current from solar panels 4001, 4003, 4005, and 4007 is passed through a diode 4009 and then to a battery pack 27 28 4011. Battery pack 4011 includes a plurality of batteries 4013, 4015, and 4017, for 29 example three AA batteries. In alternative embodiments, as few as two batteries may be

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 27

used. As is shown, each battery is a 1.2 Volt Nickel Cadmium battery. They collectively
 provide 700 milliamp hours of power.

64

3.3

۶

C] C10

₫**1**

12

13

14

15

The output of DC battery pack 4011 is provided as an input to an inverter 4019.
Inverter 4019 receives 4.8 Volts DC in and produces as an output of 800 Volts rms AC at
40 Hertz. The total current of the output is 4-6 milliamps.

6 This is provided to the cathode of a cold cathode ray tube lamp 4021. The current 7 passes through the vapor maintained within cold cathode ray tube lamp 4021 and causes 8 electrons to be stripped from the gas. These electrons collide with the phosphorus coating 9 on the interior surface of cold cathode ray tube lamp 4021, thereby emitting light.

Although the invention has been described with reference to a particular embodiment, this description is not meant to be construed in a limiting sense. Various modifications of the disclosed embodiments as well as alternative embodiments of the invention will become apparent to persons skilled in the art upon reference to the description of the invention. It is therefore contemplated that the appended claims will cover any such modifications or embodiments that fall within the scope of the invention.

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 28

What is claimed is:

An umbrella apparatus comprising: 1 1.

3. 3

- a base support portion; 2
- a pole portion coupled to the base support portion; 3

 t_{f}

4

44

1

12

3

1

2

2

1

2

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the 5 6 umbrella apparatus; and

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the 7 solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy 8 into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the 9 rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and **Č1**0 61 converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system.

The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, wherein the rechargeable electrical 2. power system and the solar energy system are both carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion above the canopy portion.

The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, wherein the rechargeable electrical 3. power system is carried by the base support portion and the solar energy system is carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion above the canopy portion.

The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, wherein the rechargeable electrical 4. power system is powered by at least one rechargeable battery.

The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, further comprising: 5. 1

an electrical charging system for recharging the rechargeable electrical power

system, the electrical charging system being adapted to receive power from an AC 3 power outlet. 4

- The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, further comprising: 6.
 - a lighting system carried by the canopy portion, the lighting system being

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 29

conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system. 3

The umbrella apparatus according to claim 6, wherein the lighting system 1 7. 2 comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and 3

8. X

5 F

ţ

4 5

13

3

ę.

a plurality of cold cathode tube elements carried by the rib members, each cold 4 cathode tube element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable 5 electrical power source. 6

The umbrella apparatus according to claim 6, wherein the lighting system 8. 1 C) 2 () 3 comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of light emitting diode elements carried by the rib members, each light emitting diode element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

The umbrella apparatus according to claim 6, wherein the lighting system 9. `.| C]2 comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of fluorescent light elements carried by the rib members, each 4 fluorescent light element being conductively coupled to and powered by the 5 rechargeable electrical power source. 6

The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, further comprising: 1 10.

an electromechanical opening and closing system for opening and closing the 2 canopy portion, the electromechanical opening and closing system being conductively 3 coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system. 4

The umbrella apparatus according to claim 10, wherein the electromechanical 1 11. opening and closing system comprises: 2

an electric motor carried by the pole portion;

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 30

4 a control system for controlling the electric motor;

15

<u>1. 1</u>

5 a gear system coupled to the electric motor; and

6 a cable and pulley system coupled to the gear system and the canopy portion;

7 wherein the opening and closing of the canopy portion is achieved by the electric

8 motor in response to selective operation of the control system.

1 12. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 11, wherein the control system 2 comprises:

a receiver conductively coupled to the electric motor;

a remote transmitter for transmitting an encoded signal to the receiver; and

a decoder conductively coupled to the receiver for decoding the encoded signal fro the transmitter.

13. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, further comprising:

a cooling system carried by the canopy portion, the cooling system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

1 14. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system comprises:

at least one electric fan coupled to the canopy portion, each electric fan being
conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

1 15. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system 2 comprises:

a fluid reservoir operably associated with the umbrella apparatus;

4 at least one mist nozzle coupled to the canopy portion, each mist nozzle being in

5 fluid communication with the fluid;

6 a conduit creating fluid communication between the fluid reservoir and each mist

7 nozzle; and

۶

3

⊨₄ 4

¤ 2

្ឋា ៧3

3

8

ŝ.

a pump for pumping the fluid from the reservoir through each mist nozzle.

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 31

1 16. An umbrella apparatus comprising:

3.1

2 a base support portion;

3 a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

 $t \chi$

4 a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

5 a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the 6 umbrella apparatus;

7 a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the 8 solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy 9 into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the 10 rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and 11 converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; 2 and

13 14

٥7

3

÷

¢

a combination of two or more of the following modular systems:

a lighting system carried by the canopy portion;

an electromechanical opening and closing system for opening and closing the canopy portion; or

a cooling system;

wherein each modular system is configured to be interchanged with each other, each modular system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

1 17. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the lighting system 2 comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

4 a plurality of cold cathode tube elements carried by the rib members, each cold

5 cathode tube element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable

6 electrical power source.

1 18. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the lighting system 2 comprises:

3 a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 32
a plurality of light emitting diode elements carried by the rib members, each light
emitting diode element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable
electrical power source.

1 19. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the cooling system 2 comprises:

a fluid reservoir operably associated with the umbrella apparatus;

at least one mist nozzle coupled to the canopy portion, each mist nozzle being in
fluid communication with the fluid;

a conduit creating fluid communication between the fluid reservoir and each mist nozzle; and

a pump for pumping the fluid from the reservoir through each mist nozzle.

20. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the electromechanical opening and closing system comprises:

an electric motor carried by the pole portion;

3. 5

 $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{A}}$

£

3

6

in it

C7 C78 C78 C78

^{*,|}5

6

7

a control system for controlling the electric motor;

a gear system coupled to the electric motor; and

a cable and pulley system coupled to the gear system and the canopy portion;

wherein the opening and closing of the canopy portion is achieved by the electric

8 motor in response to selective operation of the control system.

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 33

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

A lawn or patio umbrella with an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode ray tubes, light emitting diodes (LED's), or florescent lights, to provide relatively bright outdoor light for reading and other activities that require relatively high light intensities is provided. In one embodiment, a modular, electrically powered lawn or patio umbrella in which lighting systems, such as those utilizing cold cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights; cooling systems, such as those utilizing electric fans or misting systems; and motorized retraction systems; can be selectively interchanged is provided.

ાળા કેળ જે શાક્ષા વાય વાય લાક છે. આ ગામ કે આ ગામ મહત્ય મેન્દ્ર સાન્ય મેન્દ્ર મેન્

3

1

1.1

5.8

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 34



<u>1</u> r

÷ r



ţ

s,

a t

\$5



5.5

Σ.τ



£ t

s,

t

٤r



. .

te to

÷.



18

3 1

ş





ne Fr

÷

٩,

FIGURE 6



τα το Sec. 1. The second se

٠

۰.





.c

÷,

۳.

ŝ,

FIGURE 9







Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

18

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe that I am an original, first, and sole inventor, or joint inventor if other names are set forth below, of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

UMBRELLA APPARATUS

said application being filed herewith, and being further identified by Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US.

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to my person to be material to the patentability of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, Sec. 1.56(a).

I hereby declare that this application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/267,018, filed 7 February 2001, titled "Lighted Patio Umbrella Apparatus;" and of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/335,933, filed 2 November 2001, titled "Outdoor Lighting Systems with Cold Cathode Tubes."

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of

application or any patent issued thereon.

I hereby appoint Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574, Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650, and James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office in connection therewith.

Please send all correspondence to:

James E. Walton Registration No. 47,245 HILL & HUNN, LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102-3105 (817) 332-2113 Voice (817) 332-2114 (Facsimile) jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (E-Mail)

Inventor's Signature		Jus	South
inventor s orginatore			
Date of Signature:	2-7-02	V /	

Full Name of Inventor:Gregory G. KuelbsResidence and P.O. Address:1831 River Oaks Drive, Westlake, Texas 76262Citizenship:United States of America

Declaration

P. 1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

In Re Application of:	§	
	§	
GREGORY G. KUELBS	§	Examiner:
	Ş	
Serial No. TO BE ASSIGNED	Ś	
	Š	A (A 1 ···
Filed: HEREWITH	Š	Art Unit:
	S	
For: TOP PORTION OF LAMP OR	§	
HANGABLE ACCESSORY	§	

POWER OF ATTORNEY

Box: Patent Application Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

A CTTT

Ū,

Π.

THE WE

WORLD FACTORY, INC., assignee of the entire right, title, and interest in the above-identified application filed herewith and being further identified by Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US, hereby appoints the following attorneys to prosecute this application and transact all business in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith:

James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245; Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574; and Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650.

Send all correspondence to:

James E. Walton HILL & HUNN, LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (Voice) (817) 332-2114 (Facsimile) jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (E-Mail)

Power of Attomey

• ---

p.2

I hereby declare that all statements made of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or document or any patent resulting therefrom.

Power of Attorney

WORLD FACTORY, INC.

wet towndent By: n ~ 0 Date

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 54

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

In re Application of:	ş	
GREGORY G. KUELBS	9	Examiner:
Serial No. TO BE ASSIGNED	9 Ş	
Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2001	9 Ş	Art Unit:
For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS	9 §	

Q.

12

ASSERTION OF ENTITLEMENT TO SMALL ENTITY STATUS UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.27(c)

Box: Patent Application Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C.

Sir:

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. 1.27(c)(2)(i), the undersigned hereby asserts that **WORLD FACTRORY, INC.**, owner by assignment of the entire right, title, and interest in the subject application, is a small entity as defined in 37 C.F.R. § 1.9(d) and is entitled to small entity status for purposes of paying reduced fees under Section 41 (a) and (b) of Title 35, United States Code, to the Patent and Trademark Office with regard to the subject invention.

	"EXPRESS MAIL" No. EV024943769US
Date of Deposit:	2/7/02
I hereby certify the Service Express date indicated all Patent Application	hat this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Mail "Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 C.F.R. §1.10 on the pove and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box: on, P.O. Box 2327, Arlington, VA 22202-0327,
by	Jana E. Walter

Assertion of Small Entity Status Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

Respectfully submitted,

102 Date

O.

\$ J.

Metvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) jameswalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

Assertion of Small Entity Status Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

YOT-1002-0056



ceas u.s. Pro 10/068424			ent Appl	SEP 0	2 2003		NUMBER 2743 612713 612713	and				
	APPL NUM 10068424	FILING DATE	CLASS	SUBCLASS	GAU	EXAN	INER	<u> </u>				
665	**APPLICANTS	5: Kuelbs	362 Gregopy:		2875	C iv)hi N	ncy	103 A 194 A				•
J.c.s./d	** CONTINUING THIS APPLN CL AND CLAIMS BE	DATA VERIFIED AIMS BENEFIT C ENEFIT OF 60/33	: DF 60/267, 5,933 11/C BEST	018 02/07/20)2/2001	o1	COPY						
	PG-PUB DO NOT	PUBLISH 🖾		, RESCIND								
	35 USC 119 conditions	i met icad Examinantia intin	□yes 57 ⊃yyes 57	no	ATT	ORNEY DOCH	KET NO					
	fi71:E : Umbrella a	pparatus	2 March	mey 3 (17/20	03.0638	MH-40982-US	3					
	a de la competencia d	1			U.S.C	EPT. OF COMM./PAT.	5 TM-PTO-436L(Rev	12-94)				•
	NOTICE OF ALLOWA	ANCE MAILED	Hamaha	od & have	191	CLAI	MS ALLOW	ED It Claim for				
	3/20	DO3	Assistan	t Examiner		14	DRAWING					
	Amount Due D	Date Paid	S	Sandra O'S upervisory Pater	shea It Examiner	Sheets Drug.	Figs.Drwg.	Print Fig.				
	650 0	6-10-03	bali	Technology Cen	ter 2800 y Examiner	April	Wise					
		NAL	PRE	PARED FOR	ISSUE	Application	Examiner ,	3/20/03				
			Unauthoric Sections 1 Office is r	zed disclosure i 22, 181 and 36 estricted to auti	may be prohib 8, Possession porized emplo	ited by the Units outside the U.S. yees and contract	ed States Code Patent & Trac ctors only.	e Title 35, demark	t Age			
A	For the monthly	shis) sol	FIL	ED WITH:	DISI	(CRF) (Attached)	in pocket on rigi	CD-ROM ht inside flap)	R			
		<u>₩</u> +++++		¢ل ، مد ∭ ا∥ ح		THU THURSDAY				2-00)58	

. .











IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

In re Application of:	Ş	
GREGORY G. KUELBS	9 9	Examine
Serial No. TO BE ASSIGNED	9 §	
Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2001	9 §	Art Unit:
For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS	9 §	

Examiner:



TRANSMITTAL

Box: Patent Application

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Please file the following enclosed documents in the subject application:

- 1. This Transmittal with Certificate of Express Mail;
- 2. Patent Application Specification, including Twelve Sheets of Drawings;
- Declaration: 3.
- 4. Assertion of Entitlement to Small Entity Status;
- 5. Assignment and Assignment Cover Sheet;
- Power of Attorney; 6.
- Our check in the amount of \$410.00 to cover the \$370.00 Filing Fee and the 7. \$40.00 Assignment Recordation Fee; and
- 8. Our return postcard which we would appreciate you date stamping and returning to us.

"EXPRESS MAIL" No. EV024943769US

2 Date of Deposit: 7/02

I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service Express Mail "Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 C.F.R. §1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box: Patent Application, P.O. Box 2327, Arlington, VA 22202-0327,

ana-E.

Transmittal Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

The Filing Fee is calculated as follows:	٢
Basic Fee Assignment Recordation Fees	\$370.00 \$ 40.00
Total	\$410.00

11

t a

Enclosed is a check in the amount of \$410.00 to cover the \$370.00 Filing Fee and the \$40.00 Assignment Recordation Fee. No other fees is deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any additional fees, or credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

2/7/02 Date

mer E. Inloll

James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

Transmittal Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

YOT-1002-0061

•1 *

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

In re Application of:	Ş	
GREGORY G. KUELBS	9 9	Examiner:
Serial No. TO BE ASSIGNED	3 9	
Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2001	7 9	Art Unit:
For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS	9 6	

CERTIFICATION UNDER 35 USC SECTION 122(b)(2)(B)(i) OF NO FOREIGN FILINGS

Honorable Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicant hereby certifies (through counsel) that the above-identified application filed herewith has not, and will not, be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multi-lateral international agreement that requires publication of applications eighteen (18) months after filing. Therefore, Applicant requests that the subject application not be published under 35 U.S.C. § 122(b)(1).

"EXPRESS MAIL" No. EV024943769US

Date of Deposit: ____/7/02

I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service Express Mail "Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 C.F.R. §1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box: Patent Application, P.O. Box 2327, Arlington, VA 22202-0327,

mar Nott

Certification of No Foreign Filings Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

No additional fees are deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any additional fees, and credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

2/7/02 Date

¢

James E. Walton Reg. No. 47,245 HILL & HUNN, LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile) jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYFOR APPLICANTS

_, , , •

Certification of No Foreign Filings Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

YOT-1002-0063

. .





Respectfully submitted,

7/02 Date

Mekin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 James E. Walton, Reg. No. 29,650 James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) jameswalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

Assertion of Small Entity Status Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

YOT-1002-0064





Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

TO ALL WHOM IT MAY CONCERN:

BE IT KNOWN that I, Gregory G. Kuelbs, residing in the city of Westlake,

Texas, have invented new and useful improvements in a

UMBRELLA APPARATUS

of which the following is a specification.

"EXPRESS MAIL" No. EV024943769US

Date of Deposit: _____7/02_

I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service Express Mail "Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 C.F.R. §1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box: Patent Application, P.O. Box 2327, Arlington, VA 22202-0327,

by Jana E. Walt

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/267,018, 1 2 filed 7 February 2001, titled "Lighted Patio Umbrella Apparatus;" and of U.S. Provisional 3 Application No. 60/335,933, filed 2 November 2001, titled "Outdoor Lighting Systems with 4 Cold Cathode Tubes."

5

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

6 1. Field of the Invention:

7 The present invention relates in general to patio umbrellas, and in particular, to an 8 improved patio umbrella with integral lighting system and other modular electronic systems 9 and components.

. ⁴12 ្ជា3

þ.

2. **Description of the Prior Art:**

Ū,

13

There has been a recent increase in the interest in entertaining in a lawn and garden environment. Patio furniture is guite popular and useful for outdoor entertaining, especially in portions of the country that have warmer climates. However, the sun often ្រាវ presents an impediment to such outdoor entertaining. Consequently, sales have increased ំ<u>។</u>5 for relatively large patio and table umbrellas for use in shielding or shading table areas and people sitting around the tables from direct exposure to the sunlight. Given the relatively **116** 17 high degree of interest in patio umbrellas, it is likely that improved umbrellas, or umbrellas with enhanced functions, will be well received in the marketplace. 18

19

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

2 It is one objective of the present invention to provide a lawn or patio umbrella with
3 an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode tubes, light emitting diodes (LED's), or
4 florescent lights, to provide relatively bright outdoor light for reading and other activities that
5 require relatively high light intensities.

i C

1

S

11

6 It is another objective of the present invention to provide an a lawn or patio umbrella
7 with an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights,
8 to provide relatively bright outdoor light, and its own rechargeable power supply, including
ipin 9 solar cells.

It is yet another objective of the present invention to provide a lawn or patio umbrella
 It is yet another objective of the present invention to provide a lawn or patio umbrella
 with an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights,
 to provide relatively bright outdoor light, and a motorized retraction system that aids in
 opening and closing the umbrella.

It is yet another objective of the present invention to provide a lawn or patio umbrella with an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights, to provide relatively bright outdoor light, and a cooling system, such as one that utilizes electric fans or misting systems.

18 It is yet another objective of the present invention to provide a modular, electrically 19 powered lawn or patio umbrella in which lighting systems, such as those utilizing cold 20 cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights; cooling systems, such as those utilizing electric 21 fans or misting systems; and motorized retraction systems; can be selectively 22 interchanged.

The above objects are achieved, for example, by integrating a rechargeable power system, a lighting system, a motorized retraction system, and/or a cooling system into a relatively large patio umbrella. The resulting umbrella does not have to be connected to a household electrical system, is a relatively low power consuming device, does not generate much heat, provides a high amount of light intensity, reduces the overall energy consumption of outdoor lighting, allows for fewer batteries to be utilized in each lighting

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 3

fixture, allows for easier recharging of the batteries due to the lower power requirements,
 and allows the utilization of smaller photovoltaic solar cells.

...

. .

In the embodiment that utilizes a cold cathode tube, one additional advantage is that the cold cathode tube may be operated at multiple voltage levels to provide differing amounts of light output. In one particular embodiment, a wireless receiver and transmitter pair may be utilized to allow an operator to use a wireless command signal to change the operating state of the lighting system, such as switching the system between an on and off condition, and switching the system between varying levels of light output. Accordingly, an operator may intensify the light output from the lighting system through use of a wireless handheld transmitter when he wants additional light from a particular umbrella.

¢

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 4

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

1

C

72

١,*

2 The novel features believed characteristic of the invention are set forth in the appended claims. However, the invention itself, as well as a preferred mode of use and 3 4 further objectives and advantages thereof, will best be understood by reference to the following detailed description of the preferred embodiment when read in conjunction with 5 6 the following drawings.

7 Figure 1 is a fragmentary and sectional view of the preferred embodiment of the 8 lighted umbrella with motorized opening and closing system according to the present ⊧ւ 9 invention.

ំព ក្នា1 Figures 2A, 2B, and 2C are pictorial, fragmentary, and section views of an alternate embodiment of the present invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with a stand and a single battery and removable base cover.

₌13 Figures 3A, 3B, and 3C are pictorial, fragmentary, and partial section views of **]**4 another alternate embodiment of the present invention which is directed to a lighted ី15 umbrella with a stand, charger, batteries, and removable battery cover.

[] 16 Figure 4A is a fragmentary and sectional view of another alternate embodiment of 17 the present invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with recessed lighting.

18 Figure 4B is a fragmentary and sectional view of another alternate embodiment of the present invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with integral misting system. 19

20 Figure 4C is a fragmentary and sectional view of another alternate embodiment of 21 the present invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with an integral fan system.

22 Figure 5A is a block diagram representation of the motorized opening and closing system of the umbrella of Figure 1 and of the other embodiments of the umbrella of the 23 24 present invention.

Figure 5B is a block diagram representation of an alternate embodiment of the 25 motorized opening and closing system of Figure 5A. 26

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 5

Figure 6 is a simplified schematic of an alternative embodiment of the present 1 2 invention which is directed to a lighted umbrella with a top-mounted power unit and a cold 3 cathode tube lighting system.

÷ 1

a 4 5

...

4 Figure 7 is a simplified schematic of an alternative embodiment of the present 5 invention which is directed to an umbrella with a top-mounted power unit and an electric 6 fan cooling system.

7 Figure 8 is a simplified view of an alternative embodiment of the present invention 8 which is directed to an umbrella with a top-mounted power unit and a mist producing 9 cooling system.

៉ា ព ព Figure 9 is a simplified schematic of an alternate embodiment of the present invention that is directed to an umbrella with a top-mounted power unit and a motorized 42 13 opening and closing system.

Figure 10 is a schematic of one broad implementation of the present invention.

Figure 11 is a block diagram representation of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

(1)

1

11

Referring to Figure 1 in the drawings, one embodiment of an umbrella apparatus 2 according to the present invention is illustrated. Umbrella apparatus 11 includes an 3 4 umbrella portion 13 and a hollow tubular pole portion 15. Pole portion 15 is coupled to and supports umbrella portion 13. Umbrella portion 13 is preferably retractable and 5 may be moved between a raised, or expanded open position, which is shown; and a 6 7 lowered, or retracted, closed position in which umbrella portion is collapsed down about pole portion 15, as is conventional. A flexible canopy 17 is attached to and covers 8 9 umbrella portion 15. Canopy 17 is supported by a plurality of rib members 19, 21, 23, in م and 25. Rib members 19, 21, 23, and 25 are preferably hingedly coupled to pole **C10** C) 1 portion 15 at an upper portion of pole portion 15. An integral lighting system 26 is **]**2 carried by at least one of rib members 19, 21, 23, or 25. Lighting system 26 provides ñ13 high intensity light to umbrella apparatus 11 and the surrounding area. In the 14 embodiment of Figure 1, lighting system 26 preferably utilizes a cold cathode tube ី<u>1</u>5 which will be described in greater detail herein.

(]6 Umbrella apparatus 11 may include a base member adapted to receive pole **G**7 portion 15 and to support umbrella apparatus 11 in a generally upright position. 18 Although not shown in the embodiment Figure 1, other embodiments of the present 19 invention depict a variety of conventional and novel base members, any of which may be utilized with the embodiment of Figure 1. It should be understood that in all of the 20 21 embodiments of the present invention discussed herein, umbrella apparatus 11 may be used with little or no base member whatsoever, provided there is a table or some other 22 support structure, including the ground, which may be adapted to receive pole portion 23 24 15. For example, many patio tables are designed with central apertures to receive, support, and stabilize relatively large umbrellas. In some cases, the patio tables 25 26 eliminate the need for a base member all together.

In accordance with the preferred embodiment of the present invention, light system 26 includes a plurality of light strands 27, 29, 31, and 33 attached to rib members 19, 21, 23, and 25. Each light strand 27, 29, 31, and 33 includes electrical

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 7 -7

wiring 39 which conductively connects a plurality of small cold cathode tube light bulbs together for providing the high intensity light under canopy 17 and in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 11. A wiring ring 37 secures and locates electrical wiring 39 of light strands 27, 29, 31, and 33, so that electrical wiring 39 may be passed through the hollow interior of pole portion 15 to a power source, as will be described in detail below.

11

7 Umbrella apparatus 11 includes an optional opening and closing system 40 that 8 aids in expanding umbrella portion 13 into the open condition and retracting umbrella 9 portion 13 into the closed condition. Opening and closing system 40 includes a cable **40** system 41, a gear and pulley system 43 housed in a crank case 44, and a manual crank 1 12 13 45. Crank case 44 is preferably located on pole portion 15 such that crank case 44 is accessible when umbrella portion 13 is in the fully retracted position against pole portion 15. Cable system 41 is coupled between rib members 19, 21, 23, and 25 and gear and ri ⊒14 pulley system 43, and is preferably disposed within the hollow interior of pole portion 15. 15 [] Manual crank 45 is coupled to gear and pulley system 43 so as to allow manual 16 opening and closing of umbrella portion 13. Č)

7 Opening and closing system 40 may be automated by the inclusion of an electric 18 screw driver motor 49, or other similar relatively small diameter motor assembly, and one or more operational switches 47. Motor 49 is preferably disposed within the hollow 19 20 interior of pole portion 15 and is coupled to gear and pulley system 43. Operational 21 switches 47 are preferably carried by crank case 44, and include one or more switches 22 for controlling the operation of motor 49. With the inclusion of motor 49, a user may 23 expand and retract umbrella portion 13 simply by pressing the appropriate operational 24 switch 47. This feature is particularly advantageous when used with large umbrellas 25 which may be relatively heavy and awkward to operate, or when the user lacks sufficient strength to expand or retract umbrella portion 13. 26

Umbrella apparatus 11 includes a power system 50 having a power source 55.
In this embodiment, power source 55 is preferably disposed in the hollow interior of pole
portion 15 at a lower extremity and comprises one or more rechargeable batteries 55a.

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 8
1 A releasable end cap 57 having integral ground connectors is provided at the lowermost 2 portion of pole portion 15 to complete the electrical circuit of power system 50 and to allow access to rechargeable batteries 55a, as rechargeable batteries 55a may have to 3 4 be periodically replaced. Power system 50 provides electrical power to lighting system 26 and opening and closing system 40. An external power system charger 51 is 5 6 electrically coupled to power system 50 to aid in repeatedly charging rechargeable 7 batteries 55a. As is shown in Figure 1, an external adapter 60 may be provided. External adapter 60 includes a relatively small plug 59 that is adapted to be conductively 8 9 received by external power system charger 51, an extension cord 61, an electrical 10 transformer 63, and terminals 65 that allow transformer 63 to be plugged into a Ļ. 11 []2 conventional AC wall outlet. This allows power system charger 51 to receive power directly from a conventional AC wall outlet in order to recharge rechargeable batteries 55a.

ŝ

11

...

In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention, an 15 ⁼ alternative power system charger 62 may be provided. Alternate power system charger [] []6 62 includes at least one solar cell 35 carried by an upper cap portion 64. Solar cells 35 Ç]7 are conductively coupled to power system charger 51 via wires (not shown) that pass **G**8 through the hollow interior of pole portion 15, thereby allowing solar cells 35 to provide **1**9 an electrical charge to recharge rechargeable batteries 55a, provided sunlight falls upon 20 solar cells 35. Because solar cells 35 provide continuous recharging throughout the daylight hours, the amount and frequency of charging power system 50 with external 21 22 power system charger 60 may be minimized. It is important to note that locating 23 alternate power system charger 62 atop umbrella portion 13 is unique and 24 advantageous, particularly when alternate power system charger 62 includes solar cells 25 35 or other types of solar energy collectors. Such location limits the visibility of alternate 26 power system charger 62 and ensures that solar energy collection is maximized.

The embodiment depicted in Figure 1 is advantageous over the prior art in that it provides a number of useful functions. Umbrella apparatus 11 is lighted by lighting system 26 which does not require continuous access to a conventional AC wall outlet, while providing high intensity light. This allows umbrella apparatus 11 to be placed in a

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 9

relatively remote lawn or garden locations that are away from, or substantially removed 1 from, conventional AC power outlets. During daylight hours, solar cells 35 provide a 2 3 continuous trickle charge to recharge rechargeable batteries 55a, thereby reducing the 4 need for and frequency of use of external power system charger 60. However, when an 5 electrical charge is needed, external power system charger 60 may be utilized to 6 directly charge power system charger 51. Of course, a conventional extension cord 7 may be used, thereby eliminating the need to move umbrella apparatus 11 from its 8 remote location to a location near an AC power outlet.

11

9 Referring now to Figures 2A-2C in the drawings, another embodiment of the **_1**0 present invention is illustrated. In this embodiment, an umbrella apparatus 111 includes []1 an umbrella portion 113, a pole portion 115, a stand portion 118, and a base portion 120 **[**12 adapted to house a rechargeable power system 151. Umbrella apparatus 11 includes a 33 lighting system 126 and may include a motorized opening and closing system 140. 4 Umbrella portion 113 is preferably retractable and may be moved between a raised, or **⊫**15 expanded open position, which is shown; and a lowered, or retracted, closed position in []6 which umbrella portion is collapsed down about pole portion 115, as is conventional. A **G**7 flexible canopy 117 is attached to and covers umbrella portion 115. Canopy 117 is **C18** supported by a plurality of rib members 119, 121, 123, and 125. Rib members 119, ⁿ|9 121, 123, and 125 are preferably hingedly coupled to pole portion 115 at an upper 20 portion of pole portion 115. An integral lighting system 126 is carried by at least one of 21 rib members 119, 121, 123, or 125. Lighting system 126 provides high intensity light to umbrella apparatus 111 and the surrounding area. In the embodiment of Figures 2A-22 23 2C, lighting system 126 preferably utilizes a cold cathode tube which will be described in 24 greater detail herein.

Lighting system 126 includes a plurality of light strands 127, 129, 131, and 133 attached to rib members 119, 121, 123, and 125. Each light strand 127, 129, 131, and 133 includes electrical wiring 139 which conductively couples a plurality of small cold cathode tube light bulbs together for providing the high intensity light under canopy 117 and in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 111. A wiring ring 137 secures and locates electrical wiring 139 of light strands 127, 129, 131, and 133, so that electrical

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 10

1 wiring 139 may be passed through the hollow interior of pole portion 115 to a power2 source, as will be described in detail below.

...

f 1

ĸ

Umbrella apparatus 111 includes an optional opening and closing system 140 3 4 that aids in expanding umbrella portion 113 into the open condition and retracting 5 umbrella portion 113 into the closed condition. Opening and closing system 140 6 includes a cable system 141, a gear and pulley system 143 housed in a crank case 144, 7 and a manual crank 145. Crank case 144 is preferably located on pole portion 115 8 such that crank case 144 is accessible when umbrella portion 113 is in the fully 9 retracted position against pole portion 115. Cable system 141 is coupled between rib H0 G1 members 119, 121, 123, and 125 and gear and pulley system 143, and is preferably disposed within the hollow interior of pole portion 115. Manual crank 145 is coupled to õ12 gear and pulley system 143 so as to allow manual opening and closing of umbrella 13 portion 113.

-14 Opening and closing system 140 may be automated by the inclusion of an]5 electric screw driver motor 149, or other similar relatively small diameter motor **[**]6 assembly, and one or more operational switches 147. Motor 149 is preferably disposed C17 within the hollow interior of pole portion 115 and is coupled to gear and pulley system ۳<u>ا</u> 18 143. Operational switches 147 are preferably carried by crank case 144, and include one or more switches for controlling the operation of motor 149. With the inclusion of 19 20 motor 149, a user may expand and retract umbrella portion 113 simply by pressing the 21 appropriate operational switch 147. This feature is particularly advantageous when 22 used with large umbrellas which may be relatively heavy and awkward to operate, or when the user lacks sufficient strength to expand or retract umbrella portion 113. 23

Umbrella apparatus 111 includes a power system 150 having a power source 155. In this embodiment, power source 155 is preferably adapted to be conductively coupled to base portion 120 and comprises a rechargeable battery pack 155a, preferably an 18-Volt rechargeable battery pack. Battery pack 155a is preferably the type of rechargeable battery that is utilized with most modern cordless power tools, such as drills, saws, and sanders. Battery pack 155a is adapted to be repeatedly

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 11

recharged by plugging battery pack 155a into a conventional charger (not shown) that is
 plugged into a conventional AC power outlet. Power system 150 provides electrical
 power to lighting system 126 and opening and closing system 140.

...

. .

۰

4 In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention, an alternative power system charger 162 may be provided. Alternate power system 5 charger 162 includes at least one solar cell 135 carried by an upper cap portion 164. 6 7 Solar cells 135 are conductively coupled to power system 150 via wires (not shown) that 8 pass through the hollow interior of pole portion 115, thereby allowing solar cells 135 to 9 provide an electrical charge to recharge rechargeable battery pack 155a, provided 50 sunlight falls upon solar cells 135. Because solar cells 135 provide continuous C1 recharging throughout the daylight hours, the frequency with which battery pack 155a đ٦ č12 must be replaced or recharged may be minimized. It is important to note that locating 73 alternate power system charger 162 atop umbrella portion 113 is unique and -44 advantageous, particularly when alternate power system charger 162 includes solar **_1**5 cells 135 or other types of solar energy collectors. Such location limits the visibility of П-16 alternate power system charger 162 and ensures that solar energy collection is 17 maximized. Ē)

Stand portion 118 includes an upright shaft portion 170 having a central aperture 19 172 that is adapted to receive the pole portion 115 of umbrella apparatus 111. A 20 plurality of screw clamps 174 and 176 are provided to secure pole portion 115 within 21 shaft portion 170. A bottom portion 146 is provided to stabilize umbrella apparatus 111 22 while umbrella apparatus 111 is installed within stand portion 118.

Base portion 120 includes a removable cylindrical sleeve 156, a removable cover 160, and a receiver 168. Sleeve 156 is configured to slip over the exterior of shaft portion 170, and includes a longitudinal slot 158 that allows access to screw clamps 174 and 176 when sleeve 156 is placed over shaft portion 170. Slot 158 also allows access to a connector 166 disposed in the lower portion of pole portion 115 when sleeve 156 is placed over shaft portion 170. Connector 166 is conductively coupled to the wires from alternate power system charger 162 and solar cells 135. Cover 160 is preferably

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 12 iz

1 concave in shape, thereby defining an interior space which may be used to house the 2 electronics (not shown) of power system 150. Cover 160 may include one or more 3 seams 162 that allow access to the interior space defined by cover 160. Receiver 168 4 releasably receives battery pack 155a. A wire 152 and plug 154 conductively couple 5 battery pack 155a to connector 166, thereby providing an electrical circuit between 6 rechargeable battery pack 155a and light strands 119, 121, 123, and 125 of lighting 7 system 126.

1.4

b

8 The embodiment depicted in Figures 2A-2C is advantageous over the prior art in 9 that it provides a number of useful functions. Umbrella apparatus 111 is lighted by **⊧**10 lighting system 126 which does not require continuous access to a conventional AC wall outlet, while providing high intensity light. This allows umbrella apparatus 111 to be placed in a relatively remote lawn or garden locations that are away from, or substantially removed from, conventional AC power outlets. During daylight hours, 14 14 solar cells 135 provide a continuous trickle charge to recharge rechargeable battery •15 ∰ []6 pack 155a, thereby reducing the frequency with which battery pack 155a must be replaced or recharged. Additionally, this embodiment is advantageous over the prior art []7 in that conventional rechargeable battery packs, which are commonly used with **G**8 cordless power tools, may be utilized. If battery pack 155a is insufficiently charged 19 illuminate light strands 119, 121, 123, and 125 of light system 126, the user may simply 20 replace battery pack 155a with another fully charged battery pack 155a. In this manner, 21 lighting system 126 of umbrella apparatus 111 may be energized conveniently, even 22 though umbrella apparatus 111 may be located extremely remotely from an AC power 23 outlet, such as in a garden patio, or on a boat dock. In this embodiment, there is no 24 need to use extension cords to charge an alternate power system charger.

Referring now to Figures 3A-3C in the drawings, another embodiment of the present invention is illustrated. In this embodiment, an umbrella apparatus 211 includes an umbrella portion 213, a pole portion 215, a stand portion 218, and a base portion 220 adapted to house a rechargeable power system 251. Umbrella apparatus 211 includes a lighting system 226 and may include a motorized opening and closing system 240. Umbrella portion 213 is preferably retractable and may be moved between a raised, or

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 13

expanded open position, which is shown; and a lowered, or retracted, closed position in 1 2 which umbrella portion is collapsed down about pole portion 215, as is conventional. A 3 flexible canopy 217 is attached to and covers umbrella portion 215. Canopy 217 is supported by a plurality of rib members 219, 221, 223, and 225. Rib members 219, 4 221, 223, and 225 are preferably hingedly coupled to pole portion 215 at an upper 5 6 portion of pole portion 215. An integral lighting system 226 is carried by at least one of 7 rib members 219, 221, 223, or 225. Lighting system 226 provides high intensity light to 8 umbrella apparatus 211 and the surrounding area. In the embodiment of Figures 3A-9 3C, lighting system 226 preferably utilizes a cold cathode tube which will be described in _10 ⊧⊧ greater detail herein.

..

1.4

ι.

Lighting system 226 includes a plurality of light strands 227, 229, 231, and 233 attached to rib members 219, 221, 223, and 225. Each light strand 227, 229, 231, and 233 includes electrical wiring 239 which conductively couples a plurality of small cold cathode tube light bulbs together for providing the high intensity light under canopy 217 and in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 211. A wiring ring 237 secures and locates electrical wiring 239 of light strands 227, 229, 231, and 233, so that electrical wiring 239 may be passed through the hollow interior of pole portion 215 to a power source, as will be described in detail below.

19 Umbrella apparatus 211 includes an optional opening and closing system 240 20 that aids in expanding umbrella portion 213 into the open condition and retracting 21 umbrella portion 213 into the closed condition. Opening and closing system 240 includes a cable system 241, a gear and pulley system 243 housed in a crank case 244, 22 23 and a manual crank 245. Crank case 244 is preferably located on pole portion 215 24 such that crank case 244 is accessible when umbrella portion 213 is in the fully 25 retracted position against pole portion 215. Cable system 241 is coupled between rib 26 members 219, 221, 223, and 225 and gear and pulley system 243, and is preferably disposed within the hollow interior of pole portion 215. Manual crank 245 is coupled to 27 28 gear and pulley system 243 so as to allow manual opening and closing of umbrella 29 portion 213.

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 14

Opening and closing system 240 may be automated by the inclusion of an 1 electric screw driver motor 249, or other similar relatively small diameter motor 2 assembly, and one or more operational switches 247. Motor 249 is preferably disposed 3 within the hollow interior of pole portion 215 and is coupled to gear and pulley system 4 243. Operational switches 247 are preferably carried by crank case 244, and include 5 6 one or more switches for controlling the operation of motor 249. With the inclusion of motor 249, a user may expand and retract umbrella portion 213 simply by pressing the 7 appropriate operational switch 247. This feature is particularly advantageous when 8 9 used with large umbrellas which may be relatively heavy and awkward to operate, or 10 when the user lacks sufficient strength to expand or retract umbrella portion 213.

٠,

1.4

L

ធ1 Umbrella apparatus 211 includes a power system 250 having a rechargeable [] ក្នា2 power source 255. In this embodiment, power source 255 is preferably adapted to be d 33 conductively coupled to and hosed within base portion 220 and comprises a bundle of 14 rechargeable batteries 255a. Power system 250 provides electrical power to lighting -15 system 226 and opening and closing system 240. An external power system charger 6 and transformer 251 is electrically coupled to power system 250 to aid in repeatedly C17 charging rechargeable batteries 255a. An extension cord 261 having terminals 265 ្រាំ8 allow external power system charger and transformer 251 to be plugged into a ^[]19 conventional AC wall outlet. This allows external power system charger and transformer 251 to receive power directly from a conventional AC wall outlet in order to 20 21 recharge rechargeable batteries 255a.

22 In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention, an alternative power system charger 262 may be provided. Alternate power system 23 charger 262 includes at least one solar cell 235 carried by an upper cap portion 264. 24 Solar cells 235 are conductively coupled to power system 250 via wires (not shown) that 25 pass through the hollow interior of pole portion 215, thereby allowing solar cells 235 to 26 27 provide an electrical charge to recharge rechargeable batteries 255a, provided sunlight falls upon solar cells 235. Because solar cells 235 provide continuous recharging 28 throughout the daylight hours, the frequency with which batteries 255a must be 29 replaced or recharged may be minimized. It is important to note that locating alternate 30

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 15

power system charger 262 atop umbrella portion 213 is unique and advantageous, particularly when alternate power system charger 262 includes solar cells 235 or other types of solar energy collectors. Such location limits the visibility of alternate power system charger 262 and ensures that solar energy collection is maximized.

...

.

į.

୬

5 Stand portion 218 includes an upright shaft portion 270 having a central aperture 6 272 that is adapted to receive pole portion 215 of umbrella apparatus 211. A plurality of 7 screw clamps 274 and 276 are provided to secure pole portion 215 within shaft portion 8 270. A bottom portion 246 is provided to stabilize umbrella apparatus 211 while 9 umbrella apparatus 211 is installed within stand portion 218.

C10 Base portion 220 includes a removable cylindrical sleeve 256, a removable cover C) 6**1**1 260, and recessed portions 280 and 282. Sleeve 256 is configured to slip over the <u>]</u>2 exterior of shaft portion 270, and includes a longitudinal slot 258 that allows access to Ū3 screw clamps 274 and 276 when sleeve 256 is placed over shaft portion 270. Slot 258 _____ _14 also allows access to a connector 266 disposed in the lower portion of pole portion 215]5 when sleeve 256 is placed over shaft portion 270. Connector 266 is conductively **4**6 coupled to the wires from alternate power system charger 262 and solar cells 235. đ7 Cover 260 is preferably concave in shape, thereby defining an interior space which may ^П18 be used to house the electronics (not shown) of power system 250. Cover 260 may 19 include one or more seams $26\overline{2}$ that allow access to the interior space defined by cover 20 260. Recessed portion 280 releasably receives batteries 255a, and recessed portion 21 282 releasably receives external power system charger 251. A wire 252 and plug 254 22 conductively couple batteries 255a to connector 266, thereby providing an electrical 23 circuit between rechargeable batteries 255a and light strands 219, 221, 223, and 225 of 24 lighting system 226.

The embodiment depicted in Figures 3A-3C is advantageous over the prior art in that it provides a number of useful functions. Umbrella apparatus 211 is lighted by lighting system 226 which does not require continuous access to a conventional AC wall outlet, while providing high intensity light. This allows umbrella apparatus 211 to be placed in a relatively remote lawn or garden locations that are away from, or

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 16

substantially removed from, conventional AC power outlets. During daylight hours, solar cells 235 provide a continuous trickle charge to recharge rechargeable batteries 255a, thereby reducing the frequency with which batteries 255a must be replaced or recharged. However, when an electrical charge is needed, external power system charger 251 may be utilized to directly charge batteries 255a. Of course, a conventional extension cord may be used, thereby eliminating the need to move umbrella apparatus 211 from its remote location to a location near an AC power outlet.

• •

14

8 Referring now to Figure 4A in the drawings, the preferred embodiment of lighting 9 systems 26, 126, and 226 of the present invention is illustrated. In this embodiment, a **40** plurality of lighting elements 307, preferably cold cathode tube bulbs, are recessed into []] a rib member 301. Rib member 301 is indicative of rib members 19, 21, 23, 25, 119, 0]2 121, 123, 125, 219, 221, 223, and 225. As is shown, a cavity 303 is formed within rib 43 301. Cavity 303 is adapted to receive and hold light bulb 307. A translucent material [] _∄4 305 extends along the entire length of the cavity 303 to protect bulbs 307 from damage ື 15 ເງິ and undesirable exposure to weather and other conditions. Translucent material 305 Ĩ.16 may have a smooth surface or be textured to accentuate or enhance the light from [] (]7 bulbs 307. Although only a single cold cathode tube bulb 307 is illustrated, it should be **B**18 understood that there may be many bulbs 307 spaced along the length of rib member 19 301 to illuminate the area under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. Rib member 301 20 includes a wiring channel 309 configured to receive a wire 311 that conductively connects all of the bulbs 307 installed in rib member 301, thereby forming an electrical 21 22 circuit between bulbs 307 and the rechargeable power source, such as power sources 23 50, 150, and 250. In this manner, recessed lighting, which is carried entirely within rib 24 member 301 and is not otherwise exposed to the elements, is achieved.

Referring now to Figure 4B in the drawings, an alternate embodiment of lighting systems 26, 126, and 226 of the present invention is illustrated. This embodiment is similar to the embodiment of Figure 4A, with the exception that an integral cooling system 410 has been added. In this embodiment, a plurality of lighting elements 307, preferably cold cathode tube bulbs, are recessed into a rib member 301. Rib member 301 is indicative of rib members 19, 21, 23, 25, 119, 121, 123, 125, 219, 221, 223, and

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 17

225. Cooling system 410 comprises a misting means that provides a light mist to cool 1 the area under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. A cavity 403 is formed within rib 2 3 member 401. Cavity 403 is adapted to receive and hold light bulb 407. A translucent 4 material 405 extends along the entire length of the cavity 403 to protect bulbs 407 from 5 damage and undesirable exposure to weather and other conditions. Translucent 6 material 405 may have a smooth surface or be textured to accentuate or enhance the 7 light from bulbs 407. Although only a single cold cathode tube bulb 407 is illustrated, it 8 should be understood that there may be many bulbs 407 spaced along the length of rib 9 member 401 to illuminate the area under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. Rib 10 🚛 member 401 includes a wiring channel 409 configured to receive a wire 411 that c]11 conductively connects all of the bulbs 407 installed in rib member 401, thereby forming ជ្ញា2 an electrical circuit between bulbs 407 and the rechargeable power source, such as ₽13 power sources 50, 150, and 250. In this manner, recessed lighting, which is carried **f**.**1**4 entirely within rib member 401 and is not otherwise exposed to the elements, is ⁴⁵15 achieved.

. .

a []

f.16 A fluid supply channel 421 is provided in order to receive a fluid tight hose which ្ជា ្ញា7 supplies water to a plurality of misting nozzles 425 which generate mist 427 and 480. A **B**18 fluid discharge channel 423 is provided to carry a fluid tight hose which carries water 19 from the hose in fluid supply channel 421 to misting nozzles 425. In this embodiment, 20 umbrella apparatus should include a small reservoir (not shown) of water or other water 21 source, such as an inlet hose, and an electric pump to pressurize and pump the water 22 through cooling system 410. In this manner, umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211 23 provides both light and a cooling mist to those in close proximity.

Referring now to Figure 4C in the drawings, another embodiment of lighting systems 26, 126, and 226 of the present invention is illustrated. This embodiment is similar to the embodiment of Figure 4A, with the exception that a different integral cooling system 510 has been added. In this embodiment, a plurality of lighting elements 507, preferably cold cathode tube bulbs, are recessed into a rib member 501. Rib member 501 is indicative of rib members 19, 21, 23, 25, 119, 121, 123, 125, 219, 221, 223, and 225. Cooling system 510 comprises a fanning means that provides a

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 18

cool breeze under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. A cavity 503 is formed within rib 1 2 member 501. Cavity 503 is adapted to receive and hold light bulb 507. A translucent 3 material 505 extends along the entire length of the cavity 503 to protect bulbs 507 from damage and undesirable exposure to weather and other conditions. Translucent 4 5 material 505 may have a smooth surface or be textured to accentuate or enhance the 6 light from bulbs 507. Although only a single cold cathode tube bulb 507 is illustrated, it 7 should be understood that there may be many bulbs 507 spaced along the length of rib 8 member 501 to illuminate the area under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211. Rib 9 member 501 includes a wiring channel 509 configured to receive a wire 511 that 10 conductively connects all of the bulbs 507 installed in rib member 501, thereby forming <u></u>[1] an electrical circuit between bulbs 507 and the rechargeable power source, such as C12 013 114 power sources 50, 150, and 250. In this manner, recessed lighting, which is carried entirely within rib member 501 and is not otherwise exposed to the elements, is achieved.

ι.

A wiring conduit 520 is provided which routes electrical wiring from wire 511 to an electric motor 524 carried in a recessed cavity 522. Fanning means 528 and 580, such as fan blades, are carried by rotating shafts 530 which are connected to motors 524. When energized, motors 524 rotate fan blades 528 and 580, thereby providing a cooling breeze under umbrella apparatus 11, 111, and 211. A plurality of fan blade sets 528 and 580 may be located at predetermined locations along the length of rib member 501.

21 Referring now to Figure 5A in the drawings, a block diagram representation of 22 the preferred embodiment of opening and closing systems 40, 140, and 240 is 23 illustrated. As is shown, a pulley system 600 is coupled through gears 602 to an electric 24 motor 604. A switch 606 is electrically connected between a power supply 608 and 25 electric motor 604. Power supply 608 is indicative of rechargeable power systems 50, 26 150, and 250. External power system charger 610 and solar charger 612 are coupled 27 to power supply 608 to recharge the rechargeable battery elements. External power 28 system charger 610 is indicative of external power system chargers 51 and 251. Solar 29 charger 612 is indicative of alternate power system chargers 62, 162, and 262. 30 Mechanical actuation of switch 606 allows current to flow from power supply 608 to

electric motor 604. Motor 604 works through gears 602 to operate pulley 600, thereby 1 2 opening and closing canopy 17, 117, or 217 of umbrella apparatus 11, 111, or 211, 3 respectively.

14

0

Č.

1.4

4 Referring now to Figure 5B in the drawings, another embodiment of the opening 5 and closing systems 40, 140, and 240 of the present invention is illustrated. In this 6 embodiment, a wireless transmitter 708 is utilized to transmit encoded signals and 7 remotely communicate with a wireless receiver 706 that is carried by umbrella 8 apparatus 11, 111, or 211, preferably near housings 44, 144, and 244. A decoder 704 is provided to decode the encoded signals. As is conventional with such receivers and 9 년 10 transmitters, transmitter 708 and receiver 706 may be adapted to be coded on a ឺ1 particular frequency or coding scheme which enable a dedicated transmitter 708 to ₀12 actuate a particular receiver 706. A decoder 704 coupled to an electrical switch 702 13 serves to allow for such identification. Switch 702 controls the application of electrical -14 energy from a power supply 710 to an electric motor 700. Power supply 710 is indicative ្រាំ5 of rechargeable power systems 50, 150, and 250. Motor 700 is indicative of motors 49, ើ<u>រ</u> ដា 149, and 249. In this manner, a motorized retraction system may be actuated remotely 17 utilizing wireless transmitter 708.

^{FL}18 Referring now to Figures 6-9 in the drawings, the preferred embodiments of the 19 umbrella apparatus of the present invention are illustrated. In these embodiments, the rechargeable power source and solar recharging system are mounted atop the pole 20 21 portion of the umbrella apparatus above the canopy. One concept which runs 22 throughout the embodiments depicted in Figures 6-9 is the utilization of a "power unit." 23 This concept involves the placement of a unitary structure at a defined location relative 24 to the umbrella. For example, in the embodiments of Figures 6-9, the power unit is 25 shown at a top location directly above the umbrella apparatus, and secured to the pole 26 portion with a threaded coupling. Figure 6 depicts a top-mounted power unit and a cold cathode tube lighting system. Figure 7 depicts a top-mounted power unit with a fanning 27 28 means cooling system. Figure 8 depicts a top-mounted power unit with mist producing 29 cooling system. Figure 9 depicts a top-mounted power unit with an automated opening 30 and closing system.

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 20 (20

Although Figures 6-9 depict power units with a single electrical system, it should 1 be understood that in alternative embodiments, one could mix and match these 2 3 electrical subassemblies such that a single power unit provides electrical power to two 4 or more subassemblies. For example, an umbrella apparatus may include a lighting 5 system and either one or both of the cooling systems described above. Alternatively, an 6 umbrella apparatus may include a lighting system, a cooling system, and an automated 7 opening and closing system as described herein. In this manner, the umbrella 8 apparatus of the present invention is modular such that the different subsystems can be 9 easily mixed and matched.

. .

.,

40 This modularity allows one to manufacture and sell aftermarket kits which can be **B**1 installed and interchanged by the umbrella owners. Such kits may include a power unit 0 0 0 and one or more of the subsystems, such as a lighting system and/or a cooling system **a**3 and/or an automated opening and closing system. Because the power unit is relatively ⊓ั] _ู่⊒ี4 self-contained, little interaction is required to attach the power unit to an umbrella 15 [] apparatus. Alternatively, this modularity in design facilitates the mass manufacture of 16 umbrellas, allowing the electrical system to be manufactured by one factory, and the ៀ7 umbrella systems, which do not include electrical systems, to be manufactured by a 38 different factory. The parts can then be brought together in an assembly area and 19 assembled together.

20 Referring now specifically to Figure 6, an umbrella apparatus 701 is illustrated. 21 As is shown, a power unit 725 is provided for connection to the uppermost portion of 22 umbrella apparatus 701. In this embodiment, a cold cathode tube light subassembly 23 721 is provided for connection at a different location to umbrella apparatus 701. Power 24 unit 725 includes a solar collector 727 at its uppermost portion. Solar collector 727 is preferably carried by a top portion 703 of power unit 725. A bottom portion 705 of 25 power unit 725 defines an interior battery compartment 707. Additionally, power unit 26 27 725 carries a coupling mechanism 729 to allow coupling between power unit 725 and a 28 pole portion 719 of umbrella apparatus 701, pole portion 719 being adapted at an upper 29 end 711, preferably with threads 713, to releasably receive power unit 725. A top cap 715 hingedly connects pole portion 719 to a canopy 717. Cold cathode tube light 30

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 21

subassembly 721 is coupled at a desired location underneath canopy 717 to provide 1 2 high intensity light in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 701. Cold cathode tube light subassembly 721 is conductively coupled to power unit 725 by wiring 709 that 3 passes through the hollow interior of pole portion 719. Such light allows users to read, 4 5 play games, or perform other leisure activities that require a relatively high intensity 6 light. The electrical components of umbrella apparatus 701 are entirely independent of any household electrical system. The power source, such as power sources 50, 150, 7 and 250, carried by power unit 725 is utilized to energize cold cathode tube light 8 9 subassembly 721. During daylight hours, solar energy is collected by solar panel 727 <u>្</u>រា០ and is converted and utilized to recharge the rechargeable power source which is maintained within battery compartment 707.

. .

.,

ា1 ព្រះ ព្រះ Cold cathode tube light subassembly 721 is described below in more detail **.** 13 below. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, other low power lighting ារ ្នា4 systems may be used instead of cold cathode tube light sub assembly 721. For ື 15 example, an LED or fluorescent lighting subassembly may be utilized instead. LED and 116 fluorescent systems designed for use with solar and low voltage lighting are known in ្ឋា7 the art. Such alternative lighting sources may be easily used with the present system in **_____1**8 manners which are recognized by those skilled in the art. Implementation of LED, 19 fluorescent, or other alternate light sources instead of cold cathode tube light 20 subassembly 721 is a straightforward and need not be further described in detail.

21 Referring now specifically to Figure 7 in the drawings, an umbrella apparatus 801 22 is illustrated. As is shown, a power unit 825 is provided for connection to the uppermost portion of umbrella apparatus 801. In this embodiment, a cooling system 821 23 24 comprising a fanning means 831 is provided for connection at a different location to umbrella apparatus 801. Power unit 825 includes a solar collector 827 at its uppermost 25 portion. Solar collector 827 is preferably carried by a top portion 803 of power unit 825. 26 27 A bottom portion 805 of power unit 825 defines an interior battery compartment 807. 28 Additionally, power unit 825 carries a coupling mechanism 829 to allow coupling 29 between power unit 825 and a pole portion 819 of umbrella apparatus 801, pole portion 819 being adapted at an upper end 811, preferably with threads 813, to releasably 30

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 22

1 receive power unit 825. A top cap 815 hingedly connects pole portion 819 to a canopy 2 817. Cooling system 821 is coupled at a desired location underneath canopy 817 to provide a cooling breeze in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 801. Cooling 3 4 system 821 is conductively coupled to power unit 825 by wiring 809 that passes through the hollow interior of pole portion 819. The electrical components of umbrella apparatus 5 6 801 are entirely independent of any household electrical system. The power source, 7 such as power sources 50, 150, and 250, carried by power unit 825 is utilized to energize cooling system 821. During daylight hours, solar energy is collected by solar 8 9 panel 827 and is converted and utilized to recharge the rechargeable power source 10 ⊧₄ which is maintained within battery compartment 807.

٠.

. .

•

C]1 012 13 Referring now specifically to Figure 8 in the drawings, an umbrella apparatus 901 is illustrated. As is shown, a power unit 955 is provided for connection to the uppermost portion of umbrella apparatus 901. In this embodiment, a cooling system 921 15 16 comprising a misting system 931 is provided for connection at a different location to umbrella apparatus 901. Power unit 955 includes a solar collector 957 at its uppermost portion. Solar collector 957 is preferably carried by a top portion 903 of power unit 955. **[**]7 A bottom portion 905 of power unit 955 defines an interior battery compartment 907. 48 Additionally, power unit 955 carries a coupling mechanism 959 to allow coupling ٦J 19 between power unit 955 and a pole portion 919 of umbrella apparatus 901, pole portion 20 919 being adapted at an upper end 911, preferably with threads 913, to releasably 21 receive power unit 955. A top cap 915 hingedly connects pole portion 919 to a canopy 22 917. The electrical components of umbrella apparatus 901 are entirely independent of any household electrical system. The power source, such as power sources 50, 150, 23 and 250, carried by power unit 955 is utilized to energize cooling system 921. During 24 25 daylight hours, solar energy is collected by solar panel 957 and is converted and utilized 26 to recharge the rechargeable power source which is maintained within battery 27 compartment 907.

Cooling system 921 is coupled at a desired location underneath canopy 917 to provide a cooling mist in the area surrounding umbrella apparatus 901. Cooling system 921 is conductively coupled to power unit 955 by wiring 909 that passes through the

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 23 23

hollow interior of pole portion 919. Cooling system 921 is a misting system comprising a reservoir 925, or other water source, a pump 927, water feed lines 929, and mist nozzles 923. Pump 927 pressurizes and pumps the water from reservoir 925 through water feed lines 929 and out of mist nozzles 923, which are located at selected spaced intervals under canopy 917, at a selected flow rate. Reservoir 925 may be a conventional ice cooler, such that the mist is chilled water.

. .

• •

•

7 Referring now specifically to Figure 9 in the drawings, an umbrella apparatus 8 1001 is illustrated. As is shown, a power unit 1055 is utilized to provide electrical power 9 to an automated opening and closing system 1050. Power unit 1055 includes a solar 30 collector 1027 at its uppermost portion. Solar collector 1027 is preferably carried by a **G**1 01 top portion 1003 of power unit 1055. A bottom portion 1005 of power unit 1055 defines 012 an interior battery compartment 1007. Additionally, power unit 1055 carries a coupling **]**]3 mechanism 1029 to allow coupling between power unit 1055 and a pole portion 1019 of -14 umbrella apparatus 1001, pole portion 1019 being adapted at an upper end 1011, c]15 preferably with threads 1013, to releasably receive power unit 1055. A top cap 1015 ្រុ ជា6 hingedly connects pole portion 1019 to a canopy 1017. The electrical components of **1**17 umbrella apparatus 1001 are entirely independent of any household electrical system. t) Automated opening and closing system 1050 is conductively coupled to power unit 1055 18 اي 19 by wiring 1009 that passes through the hollow interior of pole portion 1019. The power 20 source, such as power sources 50, 150, and 250, carried by power unit 1055 is utilized to energize automated opening and closing system 1050. During daylight hours, solar 21 22 energy is collected by solar panel 1027 and is converted and utilized to recharge the 23 rechargeable power source which is maintained within battery compartment 1007.

Automated opening and closing system 1050 is carried at the uppermost portion of pole portion 1019. Opening and closing system 1050 includes a motor 1021, a transmission 1023, a line winding shaft 1025, a pulley system 1031, and a cable system 1033. These components cooperate to open and close the umbrella in response to the receipt of a command signal. The command signal may be supplied by the actuation of a switch (see Figures 1-3) carried on pole portion 1019, or it may be a wireless signal received from a paired transmitter receiver system (see Figure 5B).

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 24

1 Referring now to Figure 10 in the drawings, a schematic of the cold cathode tube 2 lighting system of the present invention is illustrated. The invention is to utilize in 3 combination a cold cathode lamp, a power inverter which supplies alternating current to the 4 cold cathode lamp, a rechargeable DC battery pack, and a solar collector. This is depicted 5 in simplified form in Figure 10. This may be utilized in any outdoor application in which 6 there is no easy or convenient access to household power. The system is entirely self-7 contained and does not require any household power for operation, or charging. As is 8 shown, the cold cathode tube lighting system 3000 includes a cold cathode lamp 3001 that 9 is supplied with AC power from a power inverter 3007. A DC battery pack 3003 includes _10 rechargeable batteries that supply DC current to power inverter 3007. A solar collector C1 C1 3005 is provided to recharge the batteries contained within DC power pack 3003.

τ.

5

____22 A cold cathode tube is a lamp that produces light by the passage of an electric -**1**3 current through a vapor or gas maintained within a tube. A cold cathode tube does not **4** require any heating above ambient temperature to produce light. The tube is phosphor <u> </u>15 coated on its inner surface, and thus may emit various colored light. In most cases, cold 46 cathode tube lamps are low-pressure mercury vapor lamps. Such lamps use a 253.7 17 nanometer ultraviolet emission from mercury vapor excited by an electrical discharge **]**18 through the lamp to charge the phosphors maintained on the wall of the lamp.

19 The optimum operating temperature for cold cathode tube is approximately 40 20 degrees Celsius, although Applicant believes that these lamps can be produced in a 21 manner to reliably provide outdoor lighting in temperatures as cold as 15 degrees 22 Fahrenheit. While the cold cathode tube does not require heating, the output of the lamp 23 does vary based upon the ambient temperature. At room temperature, the initial output of 24 a lamp is only about seventy percent of its steady state value at 40 degrees Celsius. In 25 contrast, its output is only 25 percent when the lamp is started at zero degrees Celsius. 26 Cold starts do require additional voltage from the power source to ensure reliable 27 operation. However, the number of lamp "starts" has no adverse effect on the lamp. This 28 is not true for fluorescent lamps, which degrade over time due to the number of "starts." 29 Cold cathode tubes may be utilized to supply a white light output.

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 25

1 In the preferred embodiment, a cold cathode tube manufactured by Nanjing Lampus 2 Electronics Company, Ltd. is utilized. Specifically, a lamp type CFL-20 is utilized. This has 3 an inner diameter of 1.5 millimeters. The tube length is variable, and may be anywhere in 4 the range of 50 millimeters to 30 millimeters in overall length. The tube is adapted to 5 operate on four milliamps of tube current. The tube voltage is in the range of 200 to 750 6 Volts. The average brightness of this particular tube is 40,000 cd/m².

•

13

414

ជា5 ប្រ 1.1

L.;

Another advantage of cold cathode tubes is that the tubes can be very thin in
diameter. For example, in the preferred implementation, the cold cathode tube may be one
or two millimeters in diameter. A cold cathode tube can be bent into any shape and can be
formed in very long lengths, such as several feet long. Thus, cold cathode tubes provide
greater light output per foot versus conventional lighting.
Another significant advantage of cold cathode tubes it that they have relatively long

Another significant advantage of cold cathode tubes it that they have relatively long lamp life. It is not unusual to have lamp lives which are thirty to forty thousand hours of use. In other words, these cold cathode tubes have, for all practical purposes, an infinite life span.

They are low power devices. They do not generate a lot of heat. They provide high lumen output. For these reasons, fewer batteries are needed to drive the cold cathode ray tube, and smaller solar cell panels may be utilized to recharge the batteries. In other words, relatively small form factors can be achieved because the solar cells, the batteries, and the bulbs can be relatively small in size.

The present invention can be implemented on a small, medium, or large scale so the solar cell panels and batteries may be moved up in size to either provide greater light output or to provide for a longer useful life.

Additionally, the present invention may be considered to satisfy three separate and distinct outdoor lighting applications, all of which may be incorporated into the umbrella apparatus of the present invention.

The first application is that of a "special purpose light," or "task light," such as for security applications. These special purpose lights would provide very light output, for a

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 26

relatively short duration. One example would be the utilization of the cold cathode ray tube to provide extremely high light output for a very small area for a very short time, all in response to detection of motion in a particular area. For example, a system can be configured to detect motion in a doorway, motion in a yard, motion in a driveway, or the like. The brightness can be provided which can be far in excess of 40,000 cd/m². For example, 100,000 to 200,000 cd/ m² may be provided for a very small area for a very short duration. For example, the duration may be a few minutes to ten minutes.

14

1.1

8 The second application requires a medium amount of light output, but requires 9 longer periods of operation or wider areas of coverage. For example, the light assembly provided with the umbrella provides a relatively high light output, such as in the range of 20,000 to 100,000 cd/m², in order to allow one to read, play games, operate a computer, or do needlework under the umbrella. Preferably, the battery pack and associated solar panel is sufficient to allow the system to operate continuously for a time interval in the range of 8-12 hours. Additionally, and preferably, the solar panel should be of the size and output which is sufficient to fully recharge the battery pack during the daylight hours.

A third application requires a lower level of light intensity. A good example would be lawn, patio, walkway, or landscape lighting. One does not ordinarily expect to be able to read or do intricate work under this type of lighting. In contrast, all that is expected is that a reasonable amount of light be provided to allow one to walk safely through an area. This type of task may require brightness in the range of 6,000 cd/m² to 60,000 cd/m².

Referring now to Figure 11 in the drawings, a block diagram representation of the 21 application of the present invention to a lawn lighting scenario is illustrated. In this 22 scenario, a plurality of solar panels 4001, 4003, 4005, and 4007 are connected together in 23 series. Preferably, solar panels 4001, 4003, 4005, and 4007 are manufactured by 24 Siemens and comprise mono-crystal solar panels, each providing 1.5 Volts. The total 25 current for the array of solar panels is about 80 milliamps. The current from solar panels 26 27 4001, 4003, 4005, and 4007 is passed through a diode 4009 and then to a battery pack 4011. Battery pack 4011 includes a plurality of batteries 4013, 4015, and 4017, for 28 example three AA batteries. In alternative embodiments, as few as two batteries may be 29

> Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 27

used. As is shown, each battery is a 1.2 Volt Nickel Cadmium battery. They collectively
 provide 700 milliamp hours of power.

ι,

. .

The output of DC battery pack 4011 is provided as an input to an inverter 4019.
Inverter 4019 receives 4.8 Volts DC in and produces as an output of 800 Volts rms AC at
40 Hertz. The total current of the output is 4-6 milliamps.

6 This is provided to the cathode of a cold cathode ray tube lamp 4021. The current
7 passes through the vapor maintained within cold cathode ray tube lamp 4021 and causes
8 electrons to be stripped from the gas. These electrons collide with the phosphorus coating
9 on the interior surface of cold cathode ray tube lamp 4021, thereby emitting light.

Although the invention has been described with reference to a particular embodiment, this description is not meant to be construed in a limiting sense. Various modifications of the disclosed embodiments as well as alternative embodiments of the invention will become apparent to persons skilled in the art upon reference to the description of the invention. It is therefore contemplated that the appended claims will cover any such modifications or embodiments that fall within the scope of the invention.

•

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 28





What is claimed is: 1 1. An umbrella apparatus comprising: 2 a base support portion; 3 a pole portion coupled to the base support portion; 4 a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion; 5 a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the 6 umbrella apparatus; and 7 a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the 8 solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the 9 L4 č10 rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and C] 1 converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system. ณ์ 1 2. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, wherein the rechargeable electrical , and a second s 2 power system and the solar/energy system are both carried by a housing mounted on З ំ ប្រ the pole portion above the canopy portion. 2 ني ا 1 3. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, wherein the rechargeable electrical Ĉ) 112 power system is carried by the base support portion and the solar energy system is 3 carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion above the canopy portion. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, wherein the rechargeable electrical 1 4. 2 power system is powered by at least one rechargeable battery. 1 5. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, further comprising: 2 an electrical charging system for recharging the rechargeable electrical power system, the electrical charging system being adapted to receive power from an AC power outlet. 6. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, further comprising: 1 2 a lighting system carried by the canopy portion, the lighting system being

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 29

3 conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

1 7. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 6, wherein the lighting system 2 comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

۰.

3 4

5

ຽງ 2

្ឋា3

٩ 4

山5 ^上6

0 N 1

2

្រ2 ៧3 a plurality of cold cathode tube elements carried by the rib members, each cold cathode tube element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

8. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 6, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of light emitting diode elements carried by the rib members, each light emitting diode element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

9. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 6, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of fluoréscent light elements carried by the rib members, each
fluorescent light element being conductively coupled to and powered by the
rechargeable electrical power source.

1 10. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, further comprising:

an electromechanical opening and closing system for opening and closing the
canopy portion, the electromechanical opening and closing system being conductively
coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

1 17. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 10, wherein the electromechanical 2 opening and closing system comprises:

3 an electric motor carried by the pole portion;

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 30

a control system for controlling the electric motor;	•
a gear system coupled to the electric motor; and	
a cable and pulley system coupled to the gear system and the canopy portion;	Ý
wherein the opening and closing of the canopy portion is achieved by the electric	E.
motor in response to selective operation of the control system.	1
12. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 11, wherein the control system	
comprises:	
a receiver conductively coupled to the electric motor;	
a remote transmitter for transmitting an encoded signal to the receiver; and	
a decoder conductively coupled to the receiver for decoding the encoded signal	
fro the transmitter.	
13. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, further comprising:	
a cooling system carried by the canopy portion, the cooling system being	
conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.	
14. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system	
comprises:	
at least one electric fan coupled to the canopy portion, each electric fan being	
conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.	
15. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system	
comprises:	
a fluid reservoir operably associated with the umbrella apparatus;	
at least one mist nozzle coupled to the canopy portion, each mist nozzle being in	
fluid communication with the fluid;	
a conduit creating fluid communication between the fluid reservoir and each mist	
nozzle; and	
a pump for pumping the fluid from the reservoir through each mist nozzle.	
	 a control system for controlling the electric motor; a gear system coupled to the electric motor; and a cable and pulley system coupled to the gear system and the canopy portion; wherein the opening and closing of the canopy portion is achieved by the electric motor in response to selective operation of the control system. 1. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 11, wherein the control system comprises: a receiver conductively coupled to the electric motor; a rende transmitter for transmitting an encoded signal to the receiver; and a decoder conductively coupled to the receiver for decoding the encoded signal to the transmitter. 1. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1, further comprising: a cooling system carried by the canopy portion, the cooling system being conductively coupled to the receiver for decoding system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system. 1. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system. 1. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system. 1. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system. 1. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system. 1. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system. 1. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system conductively coupled to the canopy portion, each mist nozzle being in fut communication with the fluid. a conduit creating fluid communication between

Specification • Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US
Page 31

16. An umbrella apparatus comprising:
a base support portion;
a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

4 a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

5 a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the 6 umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

a combination of two or more of the following modular systems:

a lighting system carried by the canopy portion;

an electromechanical opening and closing system for opening and closing the canopy portion; or

a cooling system;

wherein each modular system is configured to be interchanged with each other, each modular system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

1 1^{1} The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the lighting system 2 comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of cold cathode tube elements carried by the rib members, each cold
cathode tube element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable
electrical power source.

 1^{10} 1 18. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the lighting system 2 comprises:

3

1 2

З

H3

_ 15

<u>ី</u>]6

47

<u>ē</u>18

19

20

3

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 32

4 a plurality of light emitting diode elements carried by the rib members, each light 5 emitting diode element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable 6 electrical power source. 10 3 The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the cooling system 1⁄9. 1 2 comprises: 3 a fluid reservoir operably associated with the umbrella apparatus; 4 at least one mist nozzle coupled to the canopy portion, each mist nozzle being in 5 fluid communication with the fluid; 6 a conduit creating fluid communication between the fluid reservoir and each mist ÷4 nozzle; and a pump for pumping the fluid from the reservoir through each mist nozzle. il 10 **2**6. The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the electromechanical opening and closing system comprises: an electric motor carried by the pole portion; []]4 a control system for controlling the electric motor; ີ່ [] a gear system coupled to the electric motor; and 16 a cable and pulley system coupled to the gear system and the canopy portion; 7 wherein the opening and closing of the canopy portion is achieved by the electric 8 motor in response to selective operation of the control system.

1.1

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 33

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

. .

ι.

A lawn or patio umbrella with an integral lighting system that utilizes cold cathode ray tubes, light emitting diodes (LED's), or florescent lights, to provide relatively bright outdoor light for reading and other activities that require relatively high light intensities is provided. In one embodiment, a modular, electrically powered lawn or patio umbrella in which lighting systems, such as those utilizing cold cathode tubes, LED's, or florescent lights; cooling systems, such as those utilizing electric fans or misting systems; and motorized retraction systems; can be selectively interchanged is provided.

1

Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 34

YOT-1002-0098







...

т. Ц.



;*****:

1.5 1.6

l

427 FIGURE **4B**



<u>,</u>73

1. **1**.





:**^**`

11 ¹1

•



.***:**

· · · · ·

•





.*:

•

.

•

1. L.

FIGURE 9


، ،

٠,



YOT-1002-0110

•





Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe that I am an original, first, and sole inventor, or joint inventor if other names are set forth below, of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

UMBRELLA APPARATUS

said application being filed herewith, and being further identified by Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US.

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to my person to be material to the patentability of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, Sec. 1.56(a).

I hereby declare that this application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/267,018, filed 7 February 2001, titled "Lighted Patio Umbrella Apparatus;" and of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/335,933, filed 2 November 2001, titled "Outdoor Lighting Systems with Cold Cathode Tubes."

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of

1

9

C)

5

Rurchasing



p.1





application or any patent issued thereon.

I hereby appoint Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574, Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650, and James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office in connection therewith.

Please send all correspondence to:

James E. Walton Registration No. 47,245 HILL & HUNN, LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102-3105 (817) 332-2113 Voice (817) 332-2114 (Facsimile) jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (E-Mail)

Inventor's Signature: 2-7-0 Date of Signature:__

Gregory G. Kuelbs

Declaration

Full Name of Inventor:

1831 River Oaks Drive, Westlake, Texas 76262

Residence and P.O. Address:

Citizenship:

United States of America

p.1



IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

In Re Application of:	ş	
GREGORY G. KUELBS	9	Examiner:
Serial No. TO BE ASSIGNED	9 §	
Filed: HEREWITH	8 9	Art Unit:
For: TOP PORTION OF LAMP OR HANGABLE ACCESSORY	3 9 9	

POWER OF ATTORNEY

Box: Patent Application Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

WORLD FACTORY, INC., assignee of the entire right, title, and interest in the above-identified application filed herewith and being further identified by Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US, hereby appoints the following attorneys to prosecute this application and transact all business in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith:

James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245; Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574; and Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650.

Send all correspondence to:

James E. Walton HILL & HUNN, LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (Voice) (817) 332-2114 (Facsimile) jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (E-Mail)

Power of Attorney

• ••

......



817-442-9118

p.2



I hereby declare that all statements made of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or document or any patent resulting therefrom.

Power of Attorney

WORLD FACTORY, INC.

with Frendent By: 7-0 Date

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 114





IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

In re Application of:	ş	
GREGORY G. KUELBS	9 9	Examiner:
Serial No. TO BE ASSIGNED	9 9 8	
Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2001	s Ş	Art Unit:
For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS	ş	

ASSERTION OF ENTITLEMENT TO SMALL ENTITY STATUS UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.27(c)

Box: Patent Application Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C.

Sir:

.

1

9

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. 1.27(c)(2)(i), the undersigned hereby asserts that **WORLD FACTRORY, INC.**, owner by assignment of the entire right, title, and interest in the subject application, is a small entity as defined in 37 C.F.R. § 1.9(d) and is entitled to small entity status for purposes of paying reduced fees under Section 41 (a) and (b) of Title 35, United States Code, to the Patent and Trademark Office with regard to the subject invention.

	"EXPRESS MAIL" No. EV024943769US
Date of Deposit:	2/7/02
I hereby certify that Service Express Ma date indicated above Patent Application, F	this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal il "Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 C.F.R. §1.10 on the e and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box: P.O. Box 2327, Arlington, VA 22202-0327,
by	Jana E. Walter

Assertion of Small Entity Status Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1



۰. . •

14

2

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

· · · · · ·

....

COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE WASHINGTON, D.C. 2023I WWW.uspto.gov

CONFIRMATION NO. 9580

.

Bib Data Sheet

1.	SERIAL NUMBER 10/068,424	R FILING DATE 02/07/2002 RULE	CLASS	GROUP ART UNIT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. 0638MH-40982-US			
	APPLICANTS Gregory G. Ki ** CONTINUING DA THIS APPLN AND CLAIMS ** FOREIGN APPLI IF REQUIRED, FOR ** 03/07/2002	LIEIGN FILING LIVENSE	3/17/2003 267,018 02/07/2001 1/02/2001 3 1/02/2001 3 1/02/200 3 1/	INTITY **				
۰ ۲	Foreign Priority claimed 35 USC 119 (a-d) condition met Verified and Acknowledged <u>E</u> ADDRESS James E. Walton HILL & HUNN, LLP Suite 1440 201 Main Street Fort Worth , TX 7610	yes no Met after Allowing Allowing 3 1 xamkeels Signature hit	T STATE OR COUNTRY TX	SHEETS TOT DRAWING CLAI 12 20 14	AL INDEPENDENT M8 CLAIMS			
	TITLE Umbrella apparatus							
а ў.	FILING FEE FEE RECEIVED No. 370 No.	S: Authority has been giv to charge/cre for following:	ren in Paper dit DEPOSIT ACCOUN	□ All Fees □ 1.16 Fees (□ 1.17 Fees (time) □ 1.18 Fees (□ Other □ Credit	Filing) Processing Ext. of Issue)			

.' ; `

YOT-1002-0116

.

PATENT APPLICATION SERIAL NO.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE FEE RECORD SHEET

02/12/2002 MDAMTE1 00000019 10068424 01 FC:201 370.00 DP

,

į

PTO-1556 (5/87) *U.S. GPO: 2000-468-987/39595



Stu 5 000 2001 407-124 / 59197

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

ţ.

ORM PTO-875 (Rev. 6/01)

Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

YOT-1002-0118

F L



FORM PTO-875 (Rev. 8/01)

AU.S GPD:2001 482-124 / 59197

Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

CLAIMS OI					ILY		APPLICASYT(S)				· <u> </u>			
	:						CLAIMS	÷.						
	ASI	FILED	AF 1st AME	ER IDMENT	AFT 2nd AME	NDMENT			*		*		*	
	IND.	DEP.	IND.	DEP.	IND.	OEP.			IND.	DEP.	IND.	DEP.	IND.	DEP.
1		 						51						
2		<u> </u>			<u>`</u>		-	52						<u> </u>
3		<u> </u>	<u> </u>		<u> </u>			54					1	┠
5	·							55						
6						<u> </u>		56					<u> </u>	
7		1;						57						
8		1						58						
9		1			I			59				· ·		
10		<u> </u>	 				-	60		<u> </u>		ļ	 	
11							-	62						
12			 			<u> </u>	-	63	L				<u> </u>	<u> </u>
14		+	<u> </u>	· ·	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	-	64		1		<u>+</u>	1	1.
15		1			<u> </u>		.	65						
16								66		ł		:		
17							I L	67	ļ			ļ	<u> </u>	L
18						<u> </u>	-	68		ļ		<u> </u>	 	ļ
19		_ 	 		 	 	┨ ┣	69					<u> </u>	<u> </u>
20		1 -	<u> </u>				4	70				<u> </u>		
21			· · ·				-	72			-			+
23							-	73						
24							1 -	74			1			
25								75						
26							1 [76						
27							-	77					ļ	
28			·		· · · · · · · · ·		4 –	78		1		ļ		
29	·			·			{ }	/9			<u> </u>			
30					 			81		<u> </u>		<u> </u>		<u> </u>
32					<u> </u>		\mathbf{H}	82		1			1	
33		1					1 1-	83					1	1
34							1	84					1	
35] [85						
36						ļ		86					ļ	ļ
37		ļ			 	 	-	87					 	
38			 				-	88			<u> </u>	<u> </u>	╂───	
40			<u> </u>			<u> </u>	1 -	90			<u> </u>	<u> </u>		
41		+		ļ	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	1 -	91		1			<u> </u>	
42			1			· ·	1	92		<u> </u>	†- 	<u> </u>		1
43		1	<u> </u>		l	1	1	93						1
44								94						
45							1 [95						
46		ļ					l L	96		ļ			ļ	
47		 	 		ļ	<u> </u>	4 F	97 ·	ļ	<u> </u>	 	<u> </u>	 	ļ
48					<u> </u>	<u> </u>	{ ⊢	98				<u> </u>	┨───	
49 50				<u> </u>			{ -	100		+	<u> </u>	<u> </u>		+
TOTAL				-		<u> _</u>	4 F	TOTAL		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>		<u> </u>
IND.	12	」 _∎ _	<u> </u>		┝───	1 _	I L	IND.		J 📕 -		1 	<u> </u>	」 _→ ∎
DEP.	18		 		Ļ		I L	DEP.	L		<u> </u>		_	
CLAIMS	20	and a state of the second of the		* мау е	BE USED I	FOR ADD	TIONAL CLA	AIMS OF	R ADMEN	DMENTS	<u>.</u>	a ang sa ka		

YOT-1002-0120

.

. روید در این ا^{مر} او این است. در ا . · ·

	COPY OF FAILERSEY Docket No. 063 ORIGINALLY FILED	38MH-40982-US
GREGORY G. KUELBS	§ § Examiner: §	
Serial No. 10/068,424 Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2002 For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS	§ § § Art Unit: 2875 § §	
INFORMATION	DISCLOSURE STATEMENT	رالہ 10% 1C 10
Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231		25 2002 MAIL R

Filed herewith is a Form PTO-1449 listing references that may be material to the patentability of the invention disclosed and claimed in the subject application. Copies of the references listed on the Form PTO-1449 are included herewith.

This submission is made pursuant to 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.56 and 1.97(b).

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a)

I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as First Class Mail service with sufficient postage under 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a) on the date indicated below and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231.

Jane E. Walto Date of Deposit: ______ By: _____ By: _____

Information Disclosure Statement Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

This Information Disclosure Statement is being filed under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(b)(3) before the mailing date of the first Office Action.

No fee is deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any fees that are necessary, or credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

<u>6/12/02</u> Date

.

•1

. . •

E Walto ses an

Jances E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANTS

Information Disclosure Statement Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

*	-COPY OF PAPERS ORIGINALLY FILED	4A4 28 75-
e 1	OT PE IN THE UNITED STATES	S PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
	JUN 1 8 2002	Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US
	three plication of:	§
	GREGORY G. KUELBS	§ Examiner:
	Serial No. 10/068,424	9 §
	Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2002	§ Art Unit: 2875
	For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS	9 §
- 1	Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231 Sir: Please file the following enclose 1. This Transmittal with Ce 2. Information Disclosure S 3. Our return postcard wire returning to us.	TRANSMITTAL UNH 25 2007 RECEIVED and documents in the subject application: Partificate of Mailing; Statement; and which we would appreciate you date stamping and UL 0 9 2002
	CERTI 3	IFICATE OF MAILING 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a)
	I hereby certify that this paper or fe Service as First Class Mail service the date indicated below and is add Washington, D.C. 20231. Date of Deposit: <u>6/12/62</u>	ee is being deposited with the United States Postal with sufficient postage under 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a) on dressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, By: <u>Aame E. Walton</u>

Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

No fee is deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any fees that are necessary, or credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

6/12/02 Date

. . • • •

• 4

James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile

(817) 332-2114 (facsimile jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

Transmittal Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

	Туре	L#	Hits	Search Text	DBs
1	BRS	L1	27103	solar adj (power or energy)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
2	BRS	L2	957	1 and (recharg\$5 with (electrical or batter\$4))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
3	BRS	L3	10	2 and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
4	BRS	L4	16794	umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
5	BRS	L5	66	1 and 4	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
6	BRS	L6	22425	recharg\$6 adj batter\$4	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
7	BRS	L7	708	1 and 6	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
8	BRS	L8	7	umbrella and 7	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
9	BRS	L9	163	umbrella and 362/\$.ccls.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
10	BRS	L10	5	("5007811" "5172711" "5273062" "5711331" "5765582").PN.	USPAT
11	BRS	L11	9	("1148332" "1532802" "1555579" "2547896" "2627217" "2729220" "3177881" "4154255" "5007811").PN.	USPAT
12	BRS	L13	20	("1148332" "1173665" "1555579" "1683270" "2627217" "2729220" "2817281" "3102547" "3177881" "3318560" "3444799" "4154255" "4628791" "4753411" "4850564" "4867187" "4915670" "5007811" "5161561" "5172711").PN.	USPAT
13	BRS	L16	4	9 and 1	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
14	BRS	L17	448	362/96.ccls.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB

YOT-1002-0125

<u>ا</u> ، ۱

۰. ۱

•

.

•

.

•

* • •

-. .

•

¥

•

12/05/2002, EAST Version: 1.03.0002

.

	Туре	L #	Hits	Search Text	DBs
15	BRS	L18	11	362/96.ccls. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
16	BRS	L19	4	362/102.ccls. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
17	BRS	L20	59	362/102.ccls. and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
18	BRS	L21	4	362/577.ccls. and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
19	BRS	L22	1	362/577.ccls. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
20	BRS	L23	0	362/577.ccls. and solar and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
21	BRS	L24	0	362/209.ccls. and solar and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
22	BRS	L25	5	362/209.ccls. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
23	BRS	L26	34	362/276.ccls. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
24	IS&R	L27	2	("5172711").PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
25	IS&R	L28	2	("5349975").PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
26	IS&R	L29	2	("5463536").PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB

.

YOT-1002-0126

~

ζ,

÷

.

.

.

ġ

•

12/05/2002, EAST Version: 1.03.0002

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 126

	ED STATES PATENT A	nd Trademark Office	UNITED STATES DEPARTS United States Patent and T Address: COMMISSIONER OF P Washington, D.C. 20231 www.usptc.gov	AENT OF COMMERCE radomark Offico atents and trademarks
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
10/068,424	02/07/2002	Gregory G. Kuelbs	0638MH-40982-US	9580
7:	590 12/09/2002			
James E. Wal	ton		EXAM	INER
HILL & HUNN Suite 1440	N, LLP		SAWHNEY, H	ARGOBIND S
201 Main Stree	t		·	
Fort Worth, TX	76102-3105		ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
			2875	
			DATE MAILED: 12/09/2002	2

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

PTO-90C (Rev. 07-01)

YOT-1002-0127

.

		Application No.	Applicant(s)
•		10/068,424	KUELBS, GREGORY G.
	Office Action Summary	Examiner	Art Unit
		Hargobind S Sawhney	2875
Period fo	The MAILING DATE of this communication ap or Reply	pears on the cover sheet with the o	correspondence address
A SH THE I - Exter after - If the - If NO - Failu - Any r earne Status	ORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPL MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION. nsions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.1 SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication. period for reply specified above is less than thirty (30) days, a repl period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period re to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute eply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing id patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).	Y IS SET TO EXPIRE <u>3</u> MONTH 136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be tir ly within the statutory minimum of thirty (30) day will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from e, cause the application to become ABANDONE g date of this communication, even if timely filed	(S) FROM nely filed rs will be considered timely. the mailing date of this communication. D (35 U.S.C. § 133). I, may reduce any
1)🛛	Responsive to communication(s) filed on <u>16.</u>	June 2002 .	
2a)	This action is FINAL . 2b)	is action is non-final.	
3) <u></u> Dispositi	Since this application is in condition for allowa closed in accordance with the practice under on of Claims	ance except for formal matters, pr <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 1935 C.D. 11, 4	osecution as to the merits is 153 O.G. 213.
4)🖂	Claim(s) 1-20 is/are pending in the application	η.	
	4a) Of the above claim(s) is/are withdray	wn from consideration.	
5)🖂	Claim(s) <u>16-20</u> is/are allowed.		
6)🖂	Claim(s) 1-4,13 and 14 is/are rejected.		
7)🖂	Claim(s) 5-12 and 15 is/are objected to.		
8)	Claim(s) are subject to restriction and/o	r election requirement	
Application	on Papers		
9) <u> </u> (9	he specification is objected to by the Examine	r.	
10)🔲 T	he drawing(s) filed on is/are: a)∏ accer	oted or b) objected to by the Exar	niner.
	Applicant may not request that any objection to the	e drawing(s) be held in abeyance. Se	ee 37 CFR 1.85(a).
1 1) 🗌 T	he proposed drawing correction filed on	is: a) approved b) disappro	ved by the Examiner.
	If approved, corrected drawings are required in rep	bly to this Office action.	
12)🗌 T	he oath or declaration is objected to by the Exa	aminer.	
Priority u	nder 35 U.S.C. §§ 119 and 120		
13) 🗌 🛛	Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign	priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a))-(d) or (f).
a)[] All b) [] Some * c) [] None of:		
	1. Certified copies of the priority documents	s have been received.	
2	2. Certified copies of the priority documents	have been received in Application	on No.
: * Se	3. Copies of the certified copies of the prior application from the International Bur se the attached detailed Office action for a list of	ity documents have been received eau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)). of the certified copies not received	d in this National Stage
14) 🗌 Ac	knowledgment is made of a claim for domestic	priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119/e) (to a provisional application)
a) 15)⊠ Ad	The translation of the foreign language prove cknowledgment is made of a claim for domestic st	visional application has been rece c priority under 35 U.S.C. §§ 120	eived. and/or 121.
) 🛛 Notice) 🖾 Notice) 🖾 Inform	of References Cited (PTO-892) of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948) ation Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO-1449) Paper No(s) <u>2</u> .	4) Interview Summary 5) Notice of Informal P 6) Other:	(PTO-413) Paper No(s) atent Application (PTO-152)
Patent and Trai	Jemark Office	i 0	YOT-1002-0128

Office Action Summary

Part of Paper No. 3

,

.

۲

.

.

Page 2

DETAILED ACTION

1. The information statement filed on June 18,2002 has been entered.

Drawings

2. The drawings filed on February 7,2002 are acceptable subject to correction of the informalities indicated on the attached "Notice of Draftperson's Patent Drawing Review," PTO-948.

Claim Objections

Claim 12 is objected to because of the following informalities:
 Claim 12, line 6, "fro' needs to be corrected as –for--.

Appropriate correction is required.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 102

3. The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless –

(b) the invention was patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country or in public use or on sale in this country, more than one year prior to the date of application for patent in the United States.

4. <u>Claims 1,4,13 and 14</u> are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as being anticipated by Mueller et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,172,711).

Regarding claims 1,4,13 and 14, Mueller et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,172,711)

discloses an umbrella apparatus 80 (Figure 1, column 5, line 46) comprising:

- A base support portion 28' (Figure 1, column 5, line 56), a pole portion 16' (Figure 1, column 2, line 56) coupled to the base support portion 28', a canopy portion 12' (Figure 1, column 5, line 55) hingedly coupled (claims 2 and 3) to the pole portion 16' (Figure 5), a rechargeable electric power system 26' (Figure 1, column 6, lines 16-18) providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus 80;

- a solar system 82 (Figure 1, column 6, lines 60 and 61) carried by the pole portion 16, and being positioned above the canopy portion 12' (Figure 1, column 6, lines 60 and 61) for collecting solar energy and converting it into electrical energy;

YOT-1002-0130

the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the

rechargeable batteries 26' (Figure 1, column 6, lines 16-18);

- a cooling system 18' (Figure 1, column 5, lines 56 and 57) carried

by the canopy portion, and electrically coupled to the rechargeable

electrical power system 26'; and

the cooling system including a fan 18' (Figure 1, column 5, lines

56 and 57) electrically coupled to the rechargeable electrical power

system 26'.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 103

5. The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all

obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

(a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

6. Claims 2 and 3 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over

Mueller et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,172,711) in view of Benton (U.S. Patent No.

6,017,188).

Regarding Claim 2, Mueller et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,172,711) teaches an

umbrella apparatus comprising a rechargeable electrical power system being carried by

its base portion, and a solar energy system being mounted on the upper surface of its

YOT-1002-0131

canopy. However, Mueller does not teach a rechargeable electrical power system and a solar energy system both being carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion of the umbrella apparatus.

On the other hand, Benton (U.S. Patent No. 6,017,188) discloses a patio table and a pole fan combination comprising a rechargeable electrical power system and a solar energy system both being carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion of the apparatus.

It would be have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of the invention to modify the umbrella apparatus of Mueller by providing positioning of a rechargeable electrical power system and a solar energy system as taught by Benton for the benefit and advantage of less time consuming and less costly assembly requiring less wiring.

Regarding Claim 3, Mueller et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,172,711) teaches an umbrella apparatus comprising a rechargeable electrical power system being carried by its base portion, and a solar energy system being mounted on the upper surface of its canopy. However, Mueller does not teach a solar energy system being carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion of the umbrella apparatus.

On the other hand, Benton (U.S. Patent No. 6,017,188) discloses a patio table and a pole fan combination comprising a solar energy system both being carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion of the apparatus.

It would be have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of the invention to modify the umbrella apparatus of Mueller by providing a solar energy

YOT-1002-0132

Page 6

system carried by a housing <u>mounted on the pole portion of the umbrella apparatus</u> as taught by Benton (U.S. Patent No. 6,017,188) as the locations taught by Mueller and that by Benton are functionally equivalent. In addition, the poisoning taught by Benton has benefit of less time-consuming assembly of the apparatus.

Allowable Subject Matter

7. Claims 5-12 and 15 are objected to as being dependent upon a rejected base claim, but would be allowable if rewritten in independent form including all of the limitations of the base claim and any intervening claims.

The prior art of record, including Mueller et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,172,711) and Benton (U.S. Patent No. 6,017,188), does not show or suggest the applicant's invention as claimed. Specifically, the prior art of record does not disclose proper motivation for combining:

- a rechargeable electrical power system rechargeable from an AC power outlet as recited in Claim 5;

a lighting system carried by the canopy portion as recited in Claim6;

an electromechanical opening and closing the canopy as recited in
 Claim 10; and

a cooling system a fluid reservoir, a mist nozzle hydraulically

coupled to a pump as recited in Claim 15.

Claims 7-9 are necessarily objected because of their dependency on the objected base Claim 6.

Claim 11 and 12 are necessarily objected because of their dependency on the objected base Claim 10.

8. Claims 16-20 are allowed.

The prior art of record, including Mueller et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,172,711) and Benton (U.S. Patent No. 6,017,188), does not show or suggest the applicant's invention as claimed. Specifically, the prior art of record does not disclose proper motivation for combining at least two of the following modular , interchangeable systems:

- a cooling system as recited in Claim 16;
- a lighting system carried by the canopy portion as recited in Claim

16; and

- an electromechanical opening and closing the canopy as recited in

Claim 16.

Claims 17-20 are necessarily allowed because of their dependency on the allowed base Claim 16.

YOT-1002-0134

Page 8

Conclusion

9. The prior art made of record and not relied upon is considered pertinent to applicant's disclosure.

Mozdzanowski (U.S. Patent No. 5,273,062) discloses an umbrella apparatus comprising some of the claimed features claimed a solar energy system as disclosed by the applicant.

10. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Hargobind S, Sawhney whose telephone number is 703-306-5909. The examiner can normally be reached on 7:30 - 5:15.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Sandra O'Shea can be reached on 703-305-4939. The fax phone numbers for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned are 703-308-7724 for regular communications and 703-308-8303 for After Final communications.

Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or proceeding should be directed to the receptionist whose telephone number is 703-308-

Sandra O'Shea Supervisory Patent Examiner Technology Center 2800

12/4/2002

2956.

HSS

	4446	CERTIFICATION OF U	CINICLUCE I ALCH	Attomey Docket No	Serial No	
Form PTO-	1449			Allohiey Docker No.	10/068.424	
L	.IST C Use s	OF PRIOR ART C BY APPLICANT	COPY OF PAP	ERS		
	,	1011 6	1	Applicant		
		JUN 18 2007	3	GREGORY G. KUELBS		
		E THE DESCRIPTION	3	Filing Date 7 February 2002	Group Art Unit	>
		THUIL IN THE	U	S. PATENT DOCUMENTS		_
		DOCUMENT NO.	PUBLICATION DATE	INVENTOR NAME	CLASS/ SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
CH	AA	5,126,922	06/30/92	Andreasen	362/32	12/04/89
H	ĞΑΒ	5,349,975	09/27/94	Valdner	135/16	11/02/93
JA S	AC	5,463,536	10/31/95	Chou et al.	362/102	02/28/95
	AD	6,017,188	01/25/00	Benton	416/5	07/20/98
			FOR	FIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS		<u>i </u>
		DOCUMENT	PUBLICATION	COUNTRY	CLASS/	TRANSLATIO
INITIAL		NO	DATE		SUBCLASS	YES NO
						┨───┤───
				lingluding outbox title data and		<u> </u>
		OTHE	H PHIOK ART	including author, title, date, pertil	ieni paye, etc.j	
		108 1	.E.	17/4/2007		

Notice of References Cited	Application/Control No. 10/068,424	Applicant(s) Reexamina KUELBS, G	//Patent Under tion iREGORY G.
	Examiner	Art Unit	
	Hargobind S Sawhney	2875	Page 1 of 1
U.	S. PATENT DOCUMENTS		

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	Classification
	A	US-5,172,711	12-1992	Mueller et al.	135/16
	в	US-5,273,062	12-1993	Mozdzanowski, Peter	135/16
	с	US-			
	D	US-			
	Ε	US-			
	F	US-			
	G	US-			
	н	US-			
	Ι	US-			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	J	US-			
	к	US-			
	L	US-			
	м	US-			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

<u></u>		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	N					
	0				<u></u>	
	Р					
	Q					
Γ	R				······································	
	s					
	т				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
<u> </u>	<u> </u>					

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS				
 *	<u> </u>	Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)		
	υ			
	v			
	w			
	x			

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).) Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office PTO-892 (Rev. 01-2001)

Notice of References Cited

Part of Paper No. 3 YOT-1002-0137

. E. Edis Alfred

--

....

جا الالتيسيينيا الوالمانسان

Form PTO 948 (Rev. 03/01) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE - Patent and Trademark Office Application No. 00 068, 424

} *"*.

i.

The drawing(s) filed.(insert date) 02 07/02 are: A. ______ approved by the Draftsperson under 37 CFR 1.84 or 1.152. B. _______ objected to by the Draftsperson under 37 CFR 1.84 or 1.152 for the reasons indicated below. The Examiner will require submission of new, corrected drawings when necessary. Corrected drawing must be sumitted according to the instructions on the back of this notice.

	1. DRAWINGS. 37 CFR 1.84(a): Acceptable categories of drawings:	8. ARRANGEMENT OF VIEWS, 37 CFR 1.84(i)
	Black ink. Color.	Words do not appear on a horizontal, left-to-right fashion,
	Color drawings are not acceptable until petiton is granted.	when page is either upright or turned so that the top
	Fig(s)	becomes the right side, except for graphs. Fig(s)
	Pencil and non black ink not permitted. Fig(s)	9. SCALE. 37 CFR 1.84(k)
• •	2. PHOTOGRAPHS. 37 CFR 1.84(b)	Scale not large enough to show mechanism without
	1 full-tone set is required. Fig(s)	crowding when drawing is reduced in size to two-thirds in
	Photographs may not be mounted. 37 CFR 1.84(c),	reproduction of the second second second second second second
	Poor quality (half-tone). Fig(s)	Fig(s)
	3. TYPE OF PAPER: 37 CFR.1:84(e)	10. CHARACTER OF EINES, NUMBERS, & LETTERS.
	Paper noi flexible, strong, while, and durable.	and the coll of CIR 18400 million to the angle of the second structure
	Figs)	defined clean durable and black (near line auglity)
	folds conv machine marks not accented Fig(s)	Fin(e) L. II
	Mylar, yelum paper is not acceptable (too thin)	11 SHADING 37 CFR 1 $84(m)$
	Fig(s)	Solid black areas nate. Fig(s)
	4. SIZE OF PAPER: 37 CFR 1.84(f); Acceptable sizes:	Solid black shading not permitted/ Eig(s)
	21.0 cm by 29.7 cm (DIN size A4)	Shade lines, pale, rough and blurred. Fig(s)
	21.6 cm by 27.9 cm (8 1/2 x 11 inches)	12. NUMBERS, LETTERS, & REFERENCE CHARACTERS.
	All drawing sheets not the same size.	37 CFR 1.84(p)
	Sheet(s)	Numbers and reference characters not plain and legible. (c.)
	Drawings sheets not an acceptable size. Fig(s)	Fig(s)
	MARGINS. 37 eFR 1.84(g): Acceptable margins:	Figure legends are poor. Fig(s)
C, C		Numbers and reference characters not oriented in the
	Top 2.5 cm Left 2.5 cm Right 1.5 cm Bottom 1.0 cm	same direction as the view. 37 CFR 1.84(p)(1)
	SIZE: A4 Size	Fig(s)
	rop 2.5 cm Lett 2.5 cm Kight 1.5 cm Boltom 1.0 cm - (13 H 2) 1 / 4	Eigen Einer Straten not used. 37 Crist 1.64(p)(2)
	Margins not accentable. Fig/s)	Numbers, latters and reference characters must be at least
	Top (T) Left (L)	32 cm (1/8 inch) in heiplit, 37 CFR 1.84(p)(3)
	Right (R) Bottom (B)	Fig(s)
	6. VIEWS. 37 CFR 1.84(h)	13. LEAD LINES. 37 CFR 1.84(q)
	REMINDER: Specification may require revision to	Lead lines cross each other. Fig(s)
	correspond to drawing changes.	Lead lines missing. Fig(s)
	Partial views. 37 CFR 1.84(h)(2)	 NUMBERING OF SHEETS OF DRAWINGS. 37 CFR 1.84(t)
	Brackets needed to show figure as one entity.	Sheets not numbered consecutively, and in Arabic numerals
	Fig(s)	beginning with number 1. Sheet(s)
	views not labeled separately or properly.	15. NUMBERING OF VIEWS. 37 CFR 1.84(0)
	Fig(s)	beginning with number 1 Fig(s):
	Fig(s)	16 CORRECTIONS 37 CFR 1 84(w)
	(16(3)	Corrections not made from prior PTO-948
	7. SECTIONAL VIEWS, 37 CFR 1.84 (h)(3)	dated
	Hatching not indicated for sectional portions of an object.	17. DESIGN DRAWINGS. 37 CFR 1.152
	Fig(s)	Surface shading shown not appropriate. Fig(s)
	Sectional designation should be noted with Arabic or	Solid black shading not used for color contrast.
	Roman numbers. Fig(s)	Fig(s)
		······································
	COMMENTS	

REVIEWER Draftsman: Son Lam (703)308-0366	DATE <u>12/05/02</u> TELEPHONE NO	
ATTACHMENT TO PAPER NO.		
	BEST AVAILABLE COPY	Y
ulak inkonstruction N		j

-REMINDER Drawing changes may also require changes in the specification, e.g., if Fig. 1 is changed to Fig)1/AU Fig. 1B, Fig. 1C; etc.; the specification, at the Brief Description of/the/Drawing/musti likewise be changed. Please make such changes by 37 CFR 1.312 Amendment at the time of submitting drawings. intle: (2)2.1.11 * Complete in the Brockets and the CE (March 1977) * Control of particular particular of the State of the Control of the State of th INFORMATION ON HOW TO EFFECT DRAWING CHANGES a construction prove has not all 2 101 1 111 1. Correction of Drawings - 37 CFR 1.85 ्र का प्राप्त विश्वक को प्रवर्धक कर साम ह . mist . . . become incoghtade events for gradite. F. St. 2); ;7 File new drawings with the changes incorporated therein. Identifying indicia, if provided, should include the it title of the invention, invention's name, and application number, or docket number (if any) if an application number has not been assigned to the application. If this information is provided, it must be placed on the front of each sheet and centered within the top margin. The drawing should be filed as a separate paper with a In the international and a manufacture property of the origination of transmittal letter addressed to the Drawing Reveiw Branch. transmittal letter accuressor to the letter fragment of the second ្រូវកើតមាន (ស្រុងស្រុង ស្រុងស្រុង (ស្រុងស្រុង) (ស្រុងស្រុង) (ស្រុងស្រុង (ស្រុងស្រុង) (ស្រុង) (ស្រុង) (ស្រុង) (ស្រុងស្រុងស្រុង) (សមាន (ស្រុង) (សមាន) (ស្រុង) (ស្រុង) (សមាន (សមាន) (សមាន) Applicant is required to submit acceptable corrected drawings within the three-month shortened-statutory a A set of the set of th period set in the Notice of Allowability (PTOL-37). 11.98.1.84.11 Failure to take corrective action within set period will result in ABANDONMENT of the Application Constant more presented and man shar not as a state of the 3. Corrections other than Defects Noted by the Drawing Review Branch on the Form PTO-948 All changes to the drawings, other than defects noted by the Drawing Review Branch, MUST be approved by the examiner before the application will be allowed. No changes will be permitted other than correction of a fall and a defects, unless the examiner has approved the proposed changes. efects, unless the examiner-has, approved the properties of the pr این اور ایران به رو ایران اور به می باشد. مرید ایران اور به می بردید و ایران می باشد. مرید ایران اوران اور اوران - N diameter de marge (1997) et la Particle of the static static state of the s (a) A set of the se TY NO CO

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 139

	STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE J. Steptan		
THE BARENESS	3-0-03 Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US		
In re Application of:	Ş		
GREGORY G. KUELBS	§ Examiner: SAWHNEY, HARGOBIND S.		
. Serial No. 10/068,424	\$ \$		
Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2002	§ § Art Unit: 2875		
For: UMBRELLA APPARA			
	AMENDMENT A		
Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231			
This Amendment A is Please enter the follo	in response to the Office Action dated 9 December 2002. ving amendments and consider the following remarks.		
02/27/2003 SDENBDB1 00000033 10068424 01 FC:2201 84.00 DP			
	CERTIFICATE OF MAILING 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a)		
I hereby certify that this pa Service as First Class Mai the date indicated below a Washington, D.C. 20231.	per or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal service with sufficient postage under 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a) on and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents,		
Date of Deposit:	23 By: <u>Janes E. Walks</u>		
	م Amendment A		

IN THE CLAIMS:

• Please amend the claims as follows. Enclosed herewith is a Clean Version of the Amended Claims incorporating the following amendments.

1. (Hereby Cancelled).

2. (Hereby Cancelled).

3. (Hereby Cancelled).

4. (Hereby Cancelled).

(Once Amended) [The] <u>An</u> umbrella apparatus [according to claim 1, further] رُحب (omprising:

a base support portion;

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

an electrical charging system for recharging the rechargeable electrical power system, the electrical charging system being adapted to receive power from an AC power outlet.

YOT-1002

Amendment A Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2 e. (Unce Amended) [The] An umbrella apparatus [according to claim 1, further] comprising:

a base support portion;

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

a lighting system carried by the canopy portion, the lighting system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

(Not Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim b, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of cold cathode tube elements carried by the rib members, each cold cathode tube element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

8. (Not Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim -6, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of light emitting diode elements carried by the rib members, each light emitting diode element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

2

Amendment A Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 3 (Not Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim for wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of fluorescent light elements carried by the rib members, each fluorescent light element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

(Once Amended) [The] An umbrella apparatus [according to claim 1, further]

a base support portion;

đ

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

an electromechanical opening and closing system for opening and closing the canopy portion, the electromechanical opening and closing system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

1. H. (Not Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 10, wherein the electromechanical opening and closing system comprises:

an electric motor carried by the pole portion;

a control system for controlling the electric motor;

a gear system coupled to the electric motor; and

a cable and pulley system coupled to the gear system and the canopy portion;

Amendment A Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 4

YOT-1002-

1

wherein the opening and closing of the canopy portion is achieved by the electric motor in response to selective operation of the control system.

g. 12. (Once Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 41, wherein the control system comprises:

a receiver conductively coupled to the electric motor;

a remote transmitter for transmitting an encoded signal to the receiver; and

a decoder conductively coupled to the receiver for decoding the encoded signal [fro] from the transmitter.

13. (Hereby Cancelled).

Y

14. (Hereby Cancelled).

9. <u>15.</u> (Once Amended) [The] <u>An</u> umbrella apparatus [according to claim 13, wherein the cooling system comprises] <u>comprising</u>:

a base support portion;

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

a cooling system carried by the canopy portion, the cooling system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system, the cooling system comprising;

a fluid reservoir operably associated with the umbrella apparatus;

Amendment A Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 5
at least one mist nozzle coupled to the canopy portion, each mist nozzle being in fluid communication with the fluid;

a conduit creating fluid communication between the fluid reservoir and each mist nozzle; and

a pump for pumping the fluid from the reservoir through each mist nozzle.

(Allowed) An umbrella apparatus comprising:

a base support portion;

10.18.

٦

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

a combination of two or more of the following modular systems:

a lighting system carried by the canopy portion;

an electromechanical opening and closing system for opening and closing the canopy portion; or

a cooling system;

wherein each modular system is configured to be interchanged with each other, each modular system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

(Allowed) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 10, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of cold cathode tube elements carried by the rib members, each cold

Amendment A Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 6

cathode tube element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

(Allowed) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 46, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of light emitting diode elements carried by the rib members, each light emitting diode element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

19. (Allowed) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 46, wherein the cooling system comprises:

10

a fluid reservoir operably associated with the umbrella apparatus;

at least one mist nozzle coupled to the canopy portion, each mist nozzle being in fluid communication with the fluid;

a conduit creating fluid communication between the fluid reservoir and each mist nozzle; and

a pump for pumping the fluid from the reservoir through each mist nozzle.

20. (Allowed) The umbrella apparatus according to claim $\stackrel{ID}{10}$, wherein the electromechanical opening and closing system comprises:

an electric motor carried by the pole portion;

a control system for controlling the electric motor;

a gear system coupled to the electric motor; and

a cable and pulley system coupled to the gear system and the canopy portion;

wherein the opening and closing of the canopy portion is achieved by the electric motor in response to selective operation of the control system.

Amendment A Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 7





REMARKS

Claims 1-20 are currently pending in the application. Claims 1, 4, 13, and 14 stand rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b) as being anticipated by Mueller et al. Claims 2 and 3 stand rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being unpatentable over Mueller et al. in view of Benton. Claims 5-12 and 15 stand objected to as being dependent upon a rejected base claim, but would be allowable if rewritten in independent form including all of the limitations of the base claim and any intervening claims. Claims 16-20 are allowed.

Claim Objections:

Claim 12 stands objected to as containing a typographical error.

Claim 12 is hereby amended to correct the typographical error. The Applicant submits that Claim 12, as amended, is now in condition for allowance. Therefore, the Applicant respectfully requests that Claim 12, as amended, be allowed.

Claim Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b):

Claims 1, 4, 13, and 14 stand rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b) as being anticipated by Mueller et al. The Examiner states that Mueller et al. disclose an umbrella having a base support portion, a pole portion coupled to the base support portion, a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion, a rechargeable electrical power system, a solar system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion and coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, and a cooling system having a fan carried by the canopy portion and coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system.

Claims 1, 4, 13, and 14 are hereby cancelled. However, the Applicant hereby reserves the right to file continuation applications to pursue Claims 1, 4, 13, and 14.

Claim Rejections Under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a):

Claims 2 and 3 stand rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being unpatentable over Mueller et al. in view of Benton. With regard to Claim 2, the Examiner states that Mueller et al. do not teach a rechargeable electrical power system and a solar energy system both

> Amendment A Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 8

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 147

being carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion. The Examiner relies upon Benton for this feature, and states that it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of the invention to modify the Mueller et al. umbrella apparatus by providing the rechargeable electrical power system and solar energy system as taught by Benton. With regard to Claim 3, the Examiner states that Mueller et al. do not teach a solar energy system being carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion. The Examiner relies upon Benton for this feature, and states that it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of the invention to modify the Mueller et al. umbrella apparatus by providing the solar energy system carried by a housing mounted on the pole portion the pole portion as taught by Benton.

Claims 2 and 3 are hereby cancelled. However, the Applicant hereby reserves the right to file continuation applications to pursue Claims 2 and 3.

Allowable Subject Matter:

Claims 5-12 and 15 stand objected to as being dependent upon a rejected base claim, but would be allowable if rewritten in independent form including all of the limitations of the base claim and any intervening claims. Claims 16-20 are allowed.

The Applicant appreciates the Examiner's indication of allowability of Claims 5-12 and 15, and allowance of Claims 16-20.

Claims 5, 6, and 10 are hereby amended by rewriting them as independent claims with all of the limitations of Claim 1. Claim 15 is hereby amended by rewriting it as an independent claim with all of the limitations of Claims 1 and 13. The Applicant submits that Claims 5, 6, and 10, as amended, are now in condition for allowance. Therefore, the Applicant respectfully requests that Claims 5, 6, and 10 be allowed.

Claims 7-9 and 11 are not hereby amended. However, Claims 7-9 and 11 are dependent claims based upon allowable independent claims. As such, the Applicant submits that Claims 7-9 and 11 are allowable. Therefore, the Applicant respectfully requests that Claims 7-9 and 11 be allowed.

Amendment A Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 9

CONCLUSION

The subject application now contains five independent claims. Therefore, enclosed is a check in the amount of \$84.00 to cover the cost of two independent claims in excess of three (2 x \$42.00). No other fees are deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any fees that are necessary, or credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

2/17/03 Date

Janer E. Walto

James É. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

YOT-1002-0149

Amendment A Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 10

s en		۲		4
OIRE IN THE UNITED STATES	PATEN	IT AND TRADEMARK OFF	FICE	
		Attorney Docket No. 063	38MH-40982-US	
re Application of:	ş			
GREGORY G. KUELBS	9 Ş	Examiner: SAWHNEY, H	IARGOBIND S.	
Serial No. 10/068,424	Ş			
Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2002	Ş	Art Unit: 2875		
For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS	§ §		TEC	
CLEAN VERSION	<u>OF TH</u>	IE AMENDED CLAIMS	HAR -3	
Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231			2003 2003 MTER 2800	
Sir:				

ķ

٠

-

The following is a clean version of claims as amended by Applicant's Amendment A filed herewith.

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a)	
I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as First Class Mail service with sufficient postage under 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a) on the date indicated below and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231.	
Date of Deposit: <u>2/17/03</u> By: <u>Janue E. Walte</u>	
	X
Clean Version of the Amended Claims Attorney Docket No. 0664MH-40982-US Page 1 YOT-1007-0150	ر م

(Hereby Cancelled). 1. 2. (Hereby Cancelled). 3. (Hereby Cancelled). (Hereby Cancelled).

4

Ś.

1/ ø.

(Once Amended) An umbrella apparatus comprising:

a base support portion;

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

an electrical charging system for recharging the rechargeable electrical power system, the electrical charging system being adapted to receive power from an AC power outlet.

(Once Amended) An umbrella apparatus comprising:

a base support portion;

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

> Clean Version of the Amended Claims Attorney Docket No. 0664MH-40982-US Page 2

YOT-1002

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

a lighting system carried by the canopy portion, the lighting system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

7, (Not Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 6, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of cold cathode tube elements carried by the rib members, each cold cathode tube element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

8. (Not Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 6, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of light emitting diode elements carried by the rib members, each light emitting diode element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

9. (Not Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 6, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of fluorescent light elements carried by the rib members, each fluorescent light element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

> Clean Version of the Amended Claims Attorney Docket No. 0664MH-40982-US Page 3

YOT-1002-0

1

1/

(Hereby Cancelled).

13.

15.

14. (Hereby Cancelled).

(Once Amended) An umbrella apparatus comprising:

a base support portion;

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

a cooling system carried by the canopy portion, the cooling system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system, the cooling system comprising;

a fluid reservoir operably associated with the umbrella apparatus;

at least one mist nozzle coupled to the canopy portion, each mist nozzle being in fluid communication with the fluid;

a conduit creating fluid communication between the fluid reservoir and each mist nozzle; and

a pump for pumping the fluid from the reservoir through each mist nozzle.

16. (Allowed) An umbrella apparatus comprising:

a base support portion;

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

Clean Version of the Amended Claims Attorney Docket No. 0664MH-40982-US Page 5

YOT-1002

(Once Amended) An umbrella apparatus comprising: a base support portion;

a pole portion coupled to the base support portion;

a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion;

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

an electromechanical opening and closing system for opening and closing the canopy portion, the electromechanical opening and closing system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

 $i \neq i \neq j$. (Not Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim j = j = j = j = 0, wherein the electromechanical opening and closing system comprises:

an electric motor carried by the pole portion;

a control system for controlling the electric motor;

a gear system coupled to the electric motor; and

a cable and pulley system coupled to the gear system and the canopy portion;

wherein the opening and closing of the canopy portion is achieved by the electric motor in response to selective operation of the control system.

(Once Amended) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 1/1, wherein the control system comprises:

a receiver conductively coupled to the electric motor;

a remote transmitter for transmitting an encoded signal to the receiver; and

a decoder conductively coupled to the receiver for decoding the encoded signal

from the transmitter.

Clean Version of the Amended Claim Attorney Docket No. 0664MH-40982-US Page 4

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 154

YOT-1002

a rechargeable electrical power system for providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

a solar energy system carried by the pole portion above the canopy portion, the solar energy system being adapted to collect solar energy and convert the solar energy into electrical energy, the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system, such that the solar energy collected and converted into electrical energy recharges the rechargeable electrical power system; and

a combination of two or more of the following modular systems:

a lighting system carried by the canopy portion;

an electromechanical opening and closing system for opening and closing the canopy portion; or

a cooling system;

wherein each modular system is configured to be interchanged with each other, each modular system being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power system.

17. **(Allowed)** The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of cold cathode tube elements carried by the rib members, each cold cathode tube element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

18. **(Allowed)** The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the lighting system comprises:

a plurality of rib members coupled to the canopy portion; and

a plurality of light emitting diode elements carried by the rib members, each light emitting diode element being conductively coupled to and powered by the rechargeable electrical power source.

> Clean Version of the Amended Claims Attorney Docket No. 0664MH-40982-US Page 6

19. (Allowed) The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the cooling system comprises:

a fluid reservoir operably associated with the umbrella apparatus;

at least one mist nozzle coupled to the canopy portion, each mist nozzle being in fluid communication with the fluid;

a conduit creating fluid communication between the fluid reservoir and each mist nozzle; and

a pump for pumping the fluid from the reservoir through each mist nozzle.

20. **(Allowed)** The umbrella apparatus according to claim 16, wherein the electromechanical opening and closing system comprises:

an electric motor carried by the pole portion;

a control system for controlling the electric motor;

a gear system coupled to the electric motor; and

a cable and pulley system coupled to the gear system and the canopy portion;

wherein the opening and closing of the canopy portion is achieved by the electric

motor in response to selective operation of the control system.

1002-0156

2

Clean Version of the Amended Claims Attorney Docket No. 0664MH-40982-US Page 7 Applicant's Amendment A is filed herewith. Enclosed is a check in the amount of \$84.00 to cover the cost of two independent claims in excess of three (2 x \$42.00). No other fees are deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any fees that are necessary, or credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

2/17/03 Date

men E. Wall

James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

YOT-1002-0157

Clean Version of the Amended Claims Attorney Docket No. 0664MH-40982-US Page 8

OIPE J			۲	#GP.121875
TR 2 4 2003 R	IN THE UNITED STATE	S PATE	NT AND TRADEMARK O	FFICE
FILM & TRATEMENT	7		Attorney Docket No. (0638MH-40982-US
In re Ap	plication of:	ş		
GREGO	DRY G. KUELBS	9 9 9	Examiner: SAWHNEY	, HARGOBIND S.
. Serial N	lo. 10/068,424	ş		11
Filed: 7	FEBRUARY 2002	9 9 8	Art Unit: 2875	RE
For: UN	IBRELLA APPARATUS	\$ \$		CEN NR - 3
		TRANS	<u>NITTAL</u>	/ED 2003 ENTER 2800
Assistar Washin	nt Commissioner for Patents gton, D.C. 20231			Cupe Sup P
Sir:				
F	Please file the following enclos	sed docur	ments in the subject applic	ation:
1 2 3 2	 This Transmittal with C Amendment A; Clean Version of the Ai Our check in the amo claims in excess of three 	ertificate mended (bunt of \$8 ee (2 x \$4	of Mailing; Claims; 34.00 to cover the cost o 2.00); and	f two independent

5. Our return postcard which we would appreciate you date stamping and returning to us.

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a)				
I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as First Class Mail service with sufficient postage under 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a) on the date indicated below and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231. Date of Deposit: $2/17/03$ By: $4ante E \cdot Walters$				
Transmittal Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US	J.J.			

Page 1

YOT-1002-0158

~

۲

÷

Enclosed is a check in the amount of \$84.00 to cover the cost of two independent claims in excess of three (2 x \$42.00). No other fees are deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any fees that are necessary, or credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

______/<u>17/03</u>____

ģ . •

Jane E. Walto

James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

Transmittal Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2

	Туре	Hits	Search Text	DBs
		2710		USPAT: US POPULO, SPO
1	BRS	3	solar adj (power or energy)	JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
2	BRS	957	(solar adj (power or energy)) and (recharg\$5 with (electrical or batter\$4))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
3	BRS	10	((solar adj (power or energy)) and (recharg\$5 with (electrical or batter\$4))) and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
4	BRS	1679 4	umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
5	BRS	66	(solar adj (power or energy)) and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
6	BRS	2242 5	recharg\$6 adj batter\$4	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
7	BRS	708	(solar adj (power or energy)) and (recharg\$6 adj batter\$4)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
8	BRS	7	umbrella and ((solar adj (power or energy)) and (recharg\$6 adj batter\$4))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
9	BRS	163	umbrella and 362/\$.ccls.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
10	BRS	5	("5007811" "5172711" "5273062" "5711331" "5765582").PN.	USPAT
11	BRS	9	("1148332" "1532802" "1555579" "2547896" "2627217" "2729220" "3177881" "4154255" "5007811").PN.	USPAT
12	BRS	20	("1148332" "1173665" "1555579" "1683270" "2627217" "2729220" "2817281" "3102547" "3177881" "3318560" "3444799" "4154255" "4628794" "4753411" "4850564" "4867187" "4915670" "5007811" "5161561" "5172711").PN.	USPAT
13	BRS	4	(umbrella and 362/\$.ccls.) and (solar adj (power or energy))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
14	BRS	448	362/96.ccls.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
15	BRS	11	362/96.ccls. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
16	BRS .	4	362/102.ccls. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
17	BRS	59	362/102.ccls. and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
18	BRS	4	362/577.ccls. and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
19	BRS	1	362/577.ccis. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
20	BRS	0	362/577.ccls. and solar and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
21	BRS	0	362/209.ccls. and solar and umbrella	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
22	BRS	5	362/209.ccls. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
23	BRS	34	362/276.ccls. and solar	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
24	IS&R	2	("5172711"). P N.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
25	IS&R	2	("5349975").PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
26	IS&R	2	("5463536").PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
27	IS&R	2	("5172711").PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
28	IS&R	2	("5273062").PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
_				· ··

.

,

03/17/2003, EAST Version: 1.03.0002

YOT-1002-0160

١.

a.F.

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 160

	Туре	Hits	Search Text	DBs
29	IS&R	2	("6017188").PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
30	IS&R	8	("1148332").PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
31	IS&R	6	(("6017188") or ("5273062") or ("5172711")).PN.	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
32	BRS	0	362/209.ccls. and @pd > "20021201"	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
33	BRS	13	362/96.ccls. and @pd > "20021201"	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
34	BRS	28	362/276.ccls. and @pd > "20021201"	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
35	BRS	3	362/577.ccls. and @pd > "20021201"	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB
36	BRS	6	362/102.ccls. and @pd > "20021201"	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB

03/17/2003, EAST Version: 1.03.0002

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 161

	Application No	Applicant(c)
•	Application NO.	Applicant(s)
Notice of Allowability	10/068,424	KUELBS, GREGORY G.
	CXammer	
	Hargobind S Sawhney	2875
All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERI nerewith (or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance (PTC NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF PATE of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. See 37 CFR	TAPpears on the cover sheet with TS IS (OR REMAINS) CLOSED in t DL-85) or other appropriate commun INT RIGHTS. This application is su 1.313 and MPEP 1308.	a the correspondence address this application. If not included nication will be mailed in due course. THI bject to withdrawal from issue at the initia
2. The allowed claim(s) is/are <u>5-12 and 15-20</u> .	the off tebruary 24, 2005 .	
3. The drawings filed on are accepted by the Ex	aminer.	
 Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign prior a) Ali b) Some* c) None of the: 	ity under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
1. Certified copies of the priority documents	s have been received.	
2. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents	s have been received in Application	No
3. Copies of the certified copies of the prior	ity documents have been received i	in this national stage application from the
International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2)	a)).	
Certified copies not received:		
Acknowledgment is made of a claim for domestic pric	prity under 35 U.S.C. § 119(e) (to a j	provisional application).
(a) The translation of the foreign language provision	onal application has been received.	
12 YEAR MUNICIPALITY IN MUNICIPALITY (19)(10) TOT ACCOMMENTATION AND ADDRESS (19)(19)(19)(19)(19)(19)(19)(19)(19)(19)		
pplicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DA elow. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONME	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB
poplicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DA elow. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMEN □ A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be NFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives ○ CORRECTED DRAWINGS must be submitted. (a) ○ including changes required by the Notice of Draft	TE" of this communication to file a re TE" of this communication. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient.
 Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DA' elow. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT. A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be NFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives CORRECTED DRAWINGS must be submitted. (a) including changes required by the Notice of Draft 1) hereto or 2) to Paper No 	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient. (PTO-948) attached
 Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DAtelow. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT. A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be NFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives CORRECTED DRAWINGS must be submitted. (a) including changes required by the Notice of Draft 1) hereto or 2) to Paper No	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat tsperson's Patent Drawing Review (121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient. (PTO-948) attached has been approved by the Examiner.
 pplicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DA' elow. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT. A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be NFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives CORRECTED DRAWINGS must be submitted. (a) including changes required by the Notice of Drate 1) hereto or 2) to Paper No (b) including changes required by the proposed drate (c) including changes required by the attached Example. 	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat tsperson's Patent Drawing Review of wing correction filed, which miner's Amendment / Comment or in	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient. (PTO-948) attached has been approved by the Examiner. n the Office action of Paper No.
 Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DA' elow. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT. A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be NFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives CORRECTED DRAWINGS must be submitted. (a) including changes required by the Notice of Drate 1) hereto or 2) to Paper No (b) including changes required by the proposed drate (c) including changes required by the attached Example including indicia such as the application number (see 37 of each sheet. The drawings should be filed as a separate including changes required by the including changes required by the proposed drawing should be filed as a separate including changes required by the proposed changes required by the proposed drawing should be filed as a separate proposed drawing should be filed as a separate proposed changes required by the proposed drawing should be filed as a separate proposed drawing should be	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat tsperson's Patent Drawing Review of wing correction filed, which miner's Amendment / Comment or in CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the paper with a transmittal letter address	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient. (PTO-948) attached has been approved by the Examiner. n the Office action of Paper No drawings in the top margin (not the back) sed to the Official Draftsperson.
 Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DA' elow. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be NFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives CORRECTED DRAWINGS must be submitted. (a) including changes required by the Notice of Drafa 1) ⊠ hereto or 2) □ to Paper No	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat tsperson's Patent Drawing Review (wing correction filed, which miner's Amendment / Comment or in CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the paper with a transmittal letter address deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATER OR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICA	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient. (PTO-948) attached has been approved by the Examiner. In the Office action of Paper No drawings in the top margin (not the back) sed to the Official Draftsperson.
 Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DA' elow. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be NFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives CORRECTED DRAWINGS must be submitted. (a) including changes required by the Notice of Drafa 1) ⊠ hereto or 2) □ to Paper No	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat tsperson's Patent Drawing Review (wing correction filed, which miner's Amendment / Comment or in CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the paper with a transmittal letter address deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATER OR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICA	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient. (PTO-948) attached has been approved by the Examiner. In the Office action of Paper No drawings in the top margin (not the back) sed to the Official Draftsperson. NAL must be submitted. Note the NATERIAL.
 A substitute of a claim for domestic processing processing of the second procesing of the second processing of the second processing of	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat itsperson's Patent Drawing Review (wing correction filed, which miner's Amendment / Comment or in CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the paper with a transmittal letter address deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATER OR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICA OR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICA	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient. (PTO-948) attached has been approved by the Examiner. In the Office action of Paper No drawings in the top margin (not the back) sed to the Official Draftsperson. RIAL must be submitted. Note the ILAL MATERIAL. Informal Patent Application (PTO-152) Summary (PTO-413), Paper No
 A substitute of a claim of domestic processing processing of a claim of domestic processing of a claim of a claim of domestic processing of a claim of domestic processing of a claim of	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat tsperson's Patent Drawing Review (wing correction filed, which miner's Amendment / Comment or in CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the paper with a transmittal letter address deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATER OR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICA NO 6 Examiner's sit 80 Communication of the State of the transmittal state of the State of the transmittal state of the sit 80 Communication of the transmittal state of the transmittal state of the transmittal state of the transmittal state of the transmittal state of transmittal state of transmittal stat	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient. (PTO-948) attached has been approved by the Examiner. In the Office action of Paper No drawings in the top margin (not the back) sed to the Official Draftsperson. RIAL must be submitted. Note the AL MATERIAL. formal Patent Application (PTO-152) summary (PTO-413), Paper No Amendment/Comment Statement of Reasons for Allowance
 A substitute of a claim for domestic processing processing of a claim for domestic proceses of the claim for domestic proceses of the claim for do	TE" of this communication to file a re NT of this application. THIS THREE submitted. Note the attached EXAN s reason(s) why the oath or declarat tsperson's Patent Drawing Review (wing correction filed, which miner's Amendment / Comment or in CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the paper with a transmittal letter address deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATER OR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICA No 6 Examiner's sit 8⊠ Examiner's 9 Other	121. eply complying with the requirements not E-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDAB MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF tion is deficient. (PTO-948) attached has been approved by the Examiner. In the Office action of Paper No drawings in the top margin (not the back) sed to the Official Draftsperson. RIAL must be submitted. Note the NATERIAL. hormal Patent Application (PTO-152) summary (PTO-413), Paper No Amendment/Comment Statement of Reasons for Allowance

Application/Control Number: 10/068,424 Art Unit: 2875

Page 2

1. The amendment filed on February 24, 2003 has been entered. Accordingly:

- Claims 1-4,13 and 14 have been cancelled; and
- Claims 5,6,10,12 and 15 have been amended

Allowable Subject Matter

- 2. Claims 5-12 and 15-20 are allowed.
- 3. The following is an examiner's statement of reasons for allowance:

The umbrella apparatus disclosed by the applicant generally comprises:

a base support portion;

- a pole portion coupled to the base support portion, a canopy portion hingedly coupled to the pole portion, a rechargeable electric power system providing electrical power to the umbrella apparatus;

- a solar energy system carried by the pole portion, and being positioned above the canopy portion for collecting solar energy and converting it into electrical energy;

- the solar energy system being conductively coupled to the rechargeable batteries;

- a cooling system carried by the canopy portion, and electrically coupled to the rechargeable electrical power system; and

the cooling system powered by electrical power system.

Page 3

the cooling system powered by electrical power system.

The prior art of record, including Mueller et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,172,711) and Benton (U.S. Patent No. 6,017,188), does not show or suggest the applicant's invention as claimed. Specifically, the prior art of record does not disclose proper motivation for combining:

a rechargeable electrical power system rechargeable from an AC power

outlet as recited in Claim 5;

- a lighting system carried by the canopy portion, and being powered by the rechargeable electrical power source as recited in Claim 6;

- an electromechanical opening and closing the canopy as recited in Claim 10; and

- a cooling system a fluid reservoir, a mist nozzle hydraulically coupled to a pump as recited in Claim 15.

Claims 7-9 are necessarily objected because of their dependency on the objected base Claim 6.

Claim 11 and 12 are necessarily objected because of their dependency on the objected base Claim 10;

Claims 17-20 are necessarily objected because of their dependency on the objected base Claim 16.

Application/Control Number: 10/068,424 Art Unit: 2875

Page 4

Any comments considered necessary by applicant must be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee and, to avoid processing delays, should preferably accompany the issue fee. Such submissions should be clearly labeled "Comments on Statement of Reasons for Allowance."

Conclusion

4. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Hargobind S Sawhney whose telephone number is 703-306-5909. The examiner can normally be reached on 6:15 - 2:45.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Sandra O'Shea can be reached on 703-305-4939. The fax phone numbers for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned are 703-872-93187724 for regular communications and 703-872-9319 for After Final communications.

Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or proceeding should be directed to the receptionist whose telephone number is 703-308-2956.

HSS

3/17/2003

Sandra O'Shea Supervisory Patent Examiner

Technology Center 2800

THE COLOR		•
	United States Patent and Trademark Office	UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office Address: ComMISSIONER of ATENTS AND TRADEMARKS WWW.uspta.gov

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

7	590 03/20/2003				
James E. Walton HILL & HUNN, LLP Suite 1440			EXAMINER SAWHNEY, HARGOBIND S		
201 Main Street			ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS	
Fort Worth, TX 76102-3105			2875	362-102000	
		:	DATE MAILED: 03/20/2003		
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.	

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
10/068,424	02/07/2002	Gregory G. Kuelbs	0638MH-40982-US	9580

TITLE OF INVENTION: UMBRELLA APPARATUS

APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE	PUBLICATION FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	YES	\$650	\$0	\$650	06/20/2003

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. <u>PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED</u>. THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN <u>THREE MONTHS</u> FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. <u>THIS STATUTORY</u> <u>PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED</u>. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151. THE ISSUE FEE DUE INDICATED ABOVE REFLECTS A CREDIT FOR ANY PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE APPLIED IN THIS APPLICATION. THE PTOL-85B (OR AN EQUIVALENT) MUST BE RETURNED WITHIN THIS PERIOD EVEN IF NO FEE IS DUE OR THE APPLICATION WILL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the SMALL ENTITY status shown above.

If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as YES, verify your current SMALL ENTITY status:	If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as NO:
A. If the status is the same, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.	A. Pay TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above, or
B. If the status is changed, pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and twice the amount of the ISSUE FEE shown above and notify the United States Patent and Trademark Office of the change in status, or	B. If applicant claimed SMALL ENTITY status before, or is now claiming SMALL ENTITY status, check the box below and enclose the PUBLICATION FEE and 1/2 the ISSUE FEE shown above.
	Applicant claims SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27.

II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL should be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Even if the fee(s) have already been paid, Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and returned. If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Box ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980 may require payment of maintenance fees. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due.

Page 1 of 4

PTOL-85 (REV. 04-02) Approved for use through 01/31/2004.

	I					•		
•		PART B -	FEE(S) TRA	NSMITTAL		•		
Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: <u>Mail</u> Box ISSUE FEE Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231 Fax (703)746-4000								
INSTRUCTIONS: This forn appropriate. All further corr indicated unless corrected b	n should be used for trans espondence including the P elow or directed otherwise	mitting the ISSUE atent, advance order in Block 1, by (a) s	FEE and PUBLI s and notification pecifying a new o	CATION FEE (if of maintenance orrespondence ac	requir fees wi ldress;	ed). Blocks 1 through 4 ill be mailed to the curren and/or (b) indicating a se	should be complet nt correspondence a parate "FEE ADDF	ted wher address a (ESS" fo
James E. Walton HILL & HUNN, LL Suite 1440 201 Main Street Fort Worth, TX 761	Block 1)	Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission. Certificate of Mailing or Transmission I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Box Issue Fee address above, or being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO, on the date indicated below. (Depositor's name)						
								(Date
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIR	ST NAMED INVER	TOR		ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATIC	N NO.
TITLE OF INVENTION: UN	IBRELLA APPARATUS		Gregory G. Kuer	55		0038101-40982-03	9380	
APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE	PUBI	ICATION FEE		TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE	3
nonprovisional	YES	\$650		\$0		\$650	06/20/2003	3
EXAMIN	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS						
 Change of corresponder Address form PTO/SB/12: "Fee Address" indicatio PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or Number is required. 	or agents OR, alternatively, (2) the name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed.							
3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND PLEASE NOTE: Unless an been previously submitted t (A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE	RESIDENCE DATA TO BI assignee is identified belov o the USPTO or is being sub	E PRINTED ON THE v, no assignee data w mitted under separat (B) Ri	E PATENT (print vill appear on the e cover. Completi ESIDENCE: (CIT	or type) patent. Inclusion on of this form is Y and STATE OF	of assig NOT a COUI	gnee data is only appropri substitute for filing an ass NTRY)	ate when an assigni ignment.	- nent has
Please check the appropriate	assignee category or categor	ies (will not be printe	ed on the patent)	🗅 individual		prporation or other private	group entity 🛛 go	vernmen
4a. The following fee(s) are e	nclosed:	4b. Pa	yment of Fee(s):					
Issue Fee			heck in the amour	it of the fee(s) is e	nclosed	i. Anabad		
Publication Fee	□ Publication Fee □ Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.						ment to	
Advance Order - # of Co	pies	Depos	sit Account Numb	er	(er	iclose an extra copy of this	s form).	
	equested to apply the issue	ree and Publication F	ree (II any) or to r	e-apply any previ	ousiy p	aid issue fee to the applica	ation identified abov	/e.
(Authorized Signature) NOTE: The Issue Fee and other than the applicant; a interest as shown by the rec. This collection of informati obtain or retain a benefit b application. Confidentiality estimated to take 12 minute completed application form case. Any comments on t suggestions for reducing th Patent and Trademark Offic NOT SEND FEES OR Commissioner for Patents, N Under the Paperwork Red collection of information un	Publication Fee (if require registered attorney or age ords of the United States Pat on is required by 37 CFR y the public which is to fil is governed by 35 U.S.C. 12 s to complete, including ga to the USPTO. Time will he amount of time you rt is burden, should be sent to cOMPLETED FORMS COMPLETED FORMS CAShington, DC 20231. uction Act of 1995, no p less it displays a valid OMB	(Date) d) will not be accept nt; or the assignee or ent and Trademark C 1.311. The informati e (and by the USPT 2 and 37 CFR 1.14. thering, preparing, ar vary depending up quire to complete the Chief Informat merce, Washington, ro THIS ADDRE: ersons are required control number.	ted from anyone or other party in office. In fisce, this collection is nd submitting the on the individual this form and/or ion Officer, U.S. D.C. 20231, DO SS. SEND TO: to respond to a					
PTOL-85 (REV. 04-02) App	roved for use through 01/31	1 KANSMIT TH /2004. OMB 0651-00	11S FORM WITH 033 U.S.	FEE(S) Patent and Trader	nark O	ffice; U.S. DEPARTMEN	tYOFTCOMPABREE	i

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 167



Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b) (application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The patent term adjustment to date is 0 days. If the issue fee is paid on the date that is three months after the mailing date of this notice and the patent issues on the Tuesday before the date that is 28 weeks (six and a half months) after the mailing date of this notice, the term adjustment will be 0 days.

If a continued prosecution application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines patent term adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. (http://pair.uspto.gov)

Any questions regarding the patent term extension or adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (703)305-1383.

Page 3 of 4

PTOL-85 (REV. 04-02) Approved for use through 01/31/2004.



Notice of Fee Increase on January 1, 2003

If a reply to a "Notice of Allowance and Fee(s) Due" is filed in the Office on or after January 1, 2003, then the amount due will be higher than that set forth in the "Notice of Allowance and Fee(s) Due" since there will be an increase in fees effective on January 1, 2003. See Revision of Patent and Trademark Fees for Fiscal Year 2003; Final Rule, 67 Fed. Reg. 70847, 70849 (November 27, 2002).

The current fee schedule is accessible from: http://www.uspto.gov/main/howtofees.htm.

If the issue fee paid is the amount shown on the "Notice of Allowance and Fee(s) Due," but not the correct amount in view of the fee increase, a "Notice to Pay Balance of Issue Fee" will be mailed to applicant. In order to avoid processing delays associated with mailing of a "Notice to Pay Balance of Issue Fee," if the response to the Notice of Allowance and Fee(s) due form is to be filed on or after January 1, 2003 (or mailed with a certificate of mailing on or after January 1, 2003), the issue fee paid should be the fee that is required at the time the fee is paid. If the issue fee was previously paid, and the response to the "Notice of Allowance and Fee(s) Due" includes a request to apply a previously-paid issue fee to the issue fee now due, then the difference between the issue fee amount at the time the response is filed and the previously paid issue fee should be paid. <u>See</u> Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, Section 1308.01 (Eighth Edition, August 2001).

Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at (703) 305-8283.

Page 4 of 4

PTOL-85 (REV. 04-02) Approved for use through 01/31/2004.

З • · 经济市 机香油带 Form PTO 948 (Rev. 03/01) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE - Patent and Trademark Office Application No. 10 ميده فليصارد 4 Sec. 1 - 12 - NOTICE OF DRAFTSPERSON'S and a start ge ··· ŧ PATENT DRAWING REVIEW , r 1.15 make we receive the state of the second we have 11711-111-1 0 e piwale The drawing(s) filed.(insert.date)2/7/02 are: А. Д B. by objected to by the Datasperson under 37 CFR 1.84 or 1.152 for the reasons indicated below. The Examiner will require submission of new, corrected drawings when necessary. Corrected drawing must be sumitted occording to the instructions on the back of this notice. 8. ARBANGEMENT OF VIEWS. 37 CFR 1.84(i) Words do not appear on a bosizent 1.4 1. DRAWINGS. 37 CFR 1.84(a): Acceptable categories of drawings: Andrikulanichi of views. 37 CPR 1684.
 Wein page: is either upright of turined so that the top becomes the right side, except for graphs. Fig(s)
 SCALE. 37 CFR 1,84(k) Black ink. Color Color drawings are not acceptable until petiton is granted. Fig(s) ______ Pencil and non black ink not permitted. Fig(s) ______ 2. PHOTOGRAPHS. 37 CFR 1.84(b) Scale not large enough to show mechanism without crowding when drawing is reduced in size to two-thirds in. PhotoGRAPHS. 37 CFR 1.84(b)
 Photographs may not be mounted. 37 CFR 1.84(c)
 Photographs may not be mounted. 37 CFR 1.84(c)
 Poor quality (half-tone). Fig(s)
 TYPE OF PAPER. 37-CFR 1.84(c)
 Paper not flexible, strong, white, and durable. : the second reproduction is the grade of the transformer of Fig(s) ______ Erasures, alterations, overwritings, interlineations, folds, copy machine marks not accepted. Fig(s) Mylar, velum paper is not acceptable (too thin). Fig(s) 4. SIZE:OF_PAPER: 437 CFR/1.84(f): Acceptable sizes: (1) (1) (4) (2) (3) 21.0 cm by 29.7 cm (DIN size A4) 21.6 cm by 27.9 cm (8 1/2 x 11 inches) All drawing sheets not the same size.
 Sheet(s).
 Sheet(s).
 MARGINS. 37 CFR 1.84(g): Acceptable margins: La de la fair de la construction Top 2.5 cm Lcft 2.5 cm Right 1.5 cm Bottom 1.0 cm Same oursection as the view 37 CFR 1.94(p)(1) Fig(s) = Size Fig(s) = F _____ Top (T) _____ Right (R) _____ 6. VIEWS. 37 CFR 1.84(h) Bottom (B) REMINDER: Specification may require revision to correspond to drawing changes. Partial views. 37 CFR 1.84(h)(2) Lead lines cross each other. Fig(s) _____ Lead lines missing. Fig(s) _____ 14. NUMBERING OF SHEETS OF DRAWINGS. 37 CFR 1.84(t) Sheets not numbered consecutively, and in Arabic numerals beginning with number 1. Sheet(s)
 15. NUMBERING OF VIEWS. 37 CFR 1.84(u) Brackets needed to show figure as one entity. Fig(s) ______ Views not labeled separately or properly. Fig(s) _________ Enlarged view not labeled separetely or properly. Views not numbered consecutively, and in Arabic numerals, beginning with number 1. Fig(s) 16. CORRECTIONS. 37 CFR 1.84(w) Fig(s) Corrections not made from prior PTO-948
dated _____ 7. SECTIONAL VIEWS. 37 CFR 1.84 (h)(3) 17. DESIGN DRAWINGS. 37 CFR 1.152 Hatching not indicated for sectional portions of an object. Surface shading shown not appropriate. Fig(s) Solid black shading not used for color contrast. Fig(s) Sectional designation should be noted with Arabic or Roman numbers. Fig(s) Fig(s) COMMENTS

REVIEWER	MG DATE 3/17 03 TELEPHONE NO. 2033058494
ATTACHMENT TO PAPER NO.	5
	BEST AVAILABLE COPY

1944 C 1942 -

۰. .

YOT-1002-0170

1. . Vin-

REMINDER Drawing changes may also require changes in the specification, e.g., if Fig. 1 is changed to Fig)TA, Fig. 1B, Fig. IC, etc., the specification, at the Brief Description of the Drawing, must likewise be changed. Please make such changes by 37 CFR 1.312 Amendment at the time of submitting drawings. n approved in the Dr. Cycer approved to avoid a children ge apat de la traditititada de la SHU 76 rebna noar sp ouizei m .ootor and the dead ad an analyzer that are the original of balling ad taum and while be done to an appendix the balling and while be done to an appendix the balling and the DRAM, NON J. CER E84(a) Acception of continuous and an approximate AND ENTRY OF VIEWS, FT (FR. 18-17) and C. And shaft Correction of Drawings - 37 CFR 1.85 n v 200 treamenties to side extension for producting structures NC - 2 File new drawings with the changes incorporated therein. Identifying indicia, if provided, should include the title of the invention, inventor's name, and application number, or docket number (if any) if an application number has not been assigned to the application. If this information is provided, it must be placed on the front of each sheet and centered within the top margin. The drawing should be filed as a separate paper with a transmittal letter addressed to the Drawing Reveiw Branch. Bractic difficult admension of a static static for a static sta o webs to to a condition of the domb be a not in a se data hi za weti performance was about the control when the gradesent decrement weak of the Applicant is required to submit acceptable corrected drawings within the three-month shortened statutory _____21.0 vm/y_211 cmin 1_05.xc A4) _____21.0 cm bj.211 cmin 3_111 cmin xi period set in the Notice of Allowability (PTOL-37). Jan Jon G. 66, Propried, HA -32 + 333Failure to take corrective action within ser period will result in ABANDONMENT of the Application 3. Corrections other than Defects Noted by the Drawing Review Branch on the Form PTO-948 All changes to the drawings, other than defects noted by the Drawing Review Branch, MUST be approved by the examiner before the application will be allowed. No changes will be permitted other than correction of defects, unless the examiner has approved the proposed changes. 11 a.J (i) (i) ile a suo S (2)g년 19년 - 1967년 - 8년 (2)년 11 uran est. Ren 1977 - SMBM 6.Md: D*7. Specificate categories conducts 1931 BAS STORES FOR FILLS (23) BAS STORES FILLS (24) BAS STORES FOR DAWROS (3) (7) (7) (7) ייים, גיווס אי להאירוע פלגמעפג. יינס לאורי אי לדעריוע יאלווענצו בנוגע נאורי אי לדעריוע יאלווענצו בנוגע נאוראט אונט אי איגיא וועוויר אי סופ נאווע. Stock for a second s (2)qi7 Via us not tabered seek anto inpre-Approximation of the state of t 1.120 and an and gradiant tor and Langenergy to meater in the second 2) For the not note from part of and SUCTIONALIVIEW . TO CER CANDING LALE POST BOAT AND ADDRESS OF an a case we need on water solution and blatt Solid block shading shown in things faile. Solid block shading not use the componition contraint (Approx content designation de test la rotar was Atabie ar Re nan Huddaum nan 58 Fig(s) COMMENTS BEST AVAIL YOT-1002-0171 U.S. G.P.O. 2001 478-915





...







_|





_|









YOT-1002-0178

260

FIG. 3C





6/11





YOT-1002-0179

|___
















__|











I YOT-1002-0184

Yotrio Ex. YOT-1002, Page 184





AND TRADEMARK OFFICE #7/Amd B Altomey Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

7/24/03

In re Application of: GREGORY G. KUELBS Serial No. 10/068,424 Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2002 For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS

Examiner: SAWHNEY, HARGOBIND S.

Art Unit: 2875

AMENDMENT AFTER ALLOWANCE UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.312

~~~~~~

MAIL STOP: ISSUE FEE Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

# Match and Return

Sir:

This Amendment After Allowance is filed to correct a clerical error in the drawings. Part B of Form PTOL-85 is filed herewith along with the Issue Fee.

Please enter the following amendments, consider the following remarks, and issue the subject application.



Amendment After Allowance Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40962-US Page 1

# BEST AVAILABLE COPY

#### IN THE SPECIFICATION:

)

Please enter the following amendments to the Specification:

- On page 13, line 3, change "162" to --163-
- On page 16, line 19, change "262" to -- 263 -- .

2. On page 16, line 19, change "262" to --163 Minor A Marked-Up Version of the Amended Paragraph Why of the amendments are designated is filed herewith. The Application A Marked-Up Version of the Amended Paragraphs in the Specification in which the

The Applicant submits that the following amendments add no new matter to the application. In addition, the Applicant submits that the amendments proposed herein will not cause any undue burden on the Office.

> int After Allow Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 3



#### IN THE DRAWINGS:

per and a st

Please make the following changes in the drawings:

1. In Figure 2C, change reference numeral "162" to --163--.

2. In Figure 3C, change reference numeral "262" to -263-.

Two sheets of drawings with the foregoing proposed changes to Figures 2C and 3C marked in red ink are enclosed herewith.

Also enclosed are 11 sheets of formal drawings in which the foregoing changes to Figures 2C and 3C have been incorporated. Two paragraphs in the Specification are hereby amended to conform to the foregoing changes in the drawings.

The Applicant submits that the following amendments add no new matter to the application. In addition, the Applicant submits that the amendments proposed herein will not cause any undue burden on the Office.

Amendment After Allowance Vitomey Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2



#### REMARKS

The Issue Fee is paid herewith. No other fees are deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any additional fees that are necessary, and credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

6/3/03

Date

ann C. Walter

Japoes E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

#### ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

Amendment After Allowance Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 4

| IPE<br>IN THE UNITED STATE | S PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE       |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|                            | Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US |
| In re Application of:      | \$<br>\$                            |
| <b>GREGORY G. KUELBS</b>   | § Examiner: SAWHNEY, HARGOBIND S.   |
| Serial No. 10/068,424      | 9<br>9                              |
| Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2002     | §<br>§ Art Unit: <b>2875</b>        |
| For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS    | \$<br>\$                            |

#### MARKED-UP VERSIONS OF THE AMENDED PARAGRAPHS IN THE SPECIFICATION

MAIL STOP: ISSUE FEE Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

#### Sir:

This Marked-Up Versions of the Amended Paragraphs in the Specification corresponds to the amendments proposed in Applicant's Amendment After Allowance, which is filed herewith. Part B of Form PTOL-85 is filed herewith along with the Issue Fee.



# BEST AVAILABLE COPY

Marked-Up Versions of the Amended Paragraphs in the Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1





#### **IN THE SPECIFICATION:**

#### 1. On page 13, line 3, change "162" to --163--.

Base portion 120 includes a removable cylindrical sleeve 156, a removable cover 160, and a receiver 168. Sleeve 156 is configured to slip over the exterior of shaft portion 170, and includes a longitudinal slot 158 that allows access to screw clamps 174 and 176 when sleeve 156 is placed over shaft portion 170. Slot 158 also allows access to a connector 166 disposed in the lower portion of pole portion 115 when sleeve 156 is placed over shaft portion 170. Slot 158 also allows access to a connector 166 disposed in the lower portion of pole portion 115 when sleeve 156 is placed over shaft portion 170. Connector 166 is conductively coupled to the wires from alternate power system charger 162 and solar cells 135. Cover 160 is preferably concave in shape, thereby defining an interior space which may be used to house the electronics (not shown) of power system 150. Cover 160 may include one or more seams [162] <u>163</u> that allow access to the interior space defined by cover 160. Receiver 168 releasably receives battery pack 155a. A wire 152 and plug 154 conductively couple battery pack 155a to connector 166, thereby providing an electrical circuit between rechargeable battery pack 155a and light strands 119, 121, 123, and 125 of lighting system 126.

A failines

Ĵ

Marked-Up Versions of the Amended Paragraphs in the Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2





#### 2. On page 16, line 19, change "262" to --263--.

Base portion 220 includes a removable cylindrical sleeve 256, a removable cover 260, and recessed portions 280 and 282. Sleeve 256 is configured to slip over the exterior of shaft portion 270, and includes a longitudinal slot 258 that allows access to screw clamps 274 and 276 when sleeve 256 is placed over shaft portion 270. Slot 258 also allows access to a connector 266 disposed in the lower portion of pole portion 215 when sleeve 256 is placed over shaft portion 270. Connector 266 is conductively coupled to the wires from alternate power system charger 262 and solar cells 235. Cover 260 is preferably concave in shape, thereby defining an interior space which may be used to house the electronics (not shown) of power system 250. Cover 260 may include one or more seams [262] <u>263</u> that allow access to the interior space defined by cover 260. Recessed portion 280 releasably receives batteries 255a, and recessed portion an electrical circuit between rechargeable batteries 255a and light strands 219, 221, 223, and 225 of lighting system 226.

Marked-Up Versions of the Amended Paragraphs in the Specification Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 3

Approd Davles





The Issue Fee is paid herewith. No other fees are deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any additional fees that are necessary, and credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

6/3/03

Date

Jener E. Walts James E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245

Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (volce) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile <u>iimwalton@hillandhunn.com</u> (e-mail) <u>kenhill@hillandhunn.com</u> (e-mail) <u>melhunn@hillandhunn.com</u> (e-mail)

#### ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

Marked-Up Versions of the Amended Paragraphs in the Specification Attorney Docket No. 0838MH-40982-US Page 4



# IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

§

\$\$

§ § Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US

In re Application of: GREGORY G. KUELBS Serial No. 10/068,424 Filed: 7 FEBRUARY 2002 For: UMBRELLA APPARATUS

Examiner: SAWHNEY, HARGOBIND S.

Art Unit: 2875

#6/drawns M/17/03

## LETTER TO THE OFFICIAL DRAFTSPERSON

MAIL STOP: ISSUE FEE Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

Sir:

Enclosed herewith are 11 sheets of formal drawings for the subject application. These drawings incorporate proposed changes to Figures 2C and 3C, which have been submitted to the Examiner along with an Amendment After Allowance.

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a) I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as First Class Mail service with sufficient postage under 37 C.F.R. § 1.8(a) on the date indicated below and is addressed to Mail Stop: Issue Fee, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. Emen E. Walt Date of Deposit: 6/3/03 By:

Letter to the Official Draftsperson Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 1

UJ YOTO 02**-0**193

The Issue Fee is paid herewith. No other fees are deemed to be necessary; however, the undersigned hereby authorizes the Commissioner to charge any additional fees that are necessary, and credit any overpayments, to Deposit Account No. **50-1060**.

Respectfully submitted,

6/3/03 Date

we E. Walt

Jamés E. Walton, Reg. No. 47,245 Kenneth C. Hill, Reg. No. 29,650 Melvin A. Hunn, Reg. No. 32,574 HILL & HUNN LLP 201 Main Street, Suite 1440 Fort Worth, Texas 76102 (817) 332-2113 (voice) (817) 332-2114 (facsimile jimwalton@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) kenhill@hillandhunn.com (e-mail) melhunn@hillandhunn.com (e-mail)

ATTORNEYS FOR APPLICANT

Letter to the Official Draftsperson Attorney Docket No. 0638MH-40982-US Page 2







YOT-1002-0196











----|











\_|















\_\_\_\_|





\_|







#### PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: Mail Box ISSUE FEE Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | makened he used for trunc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | mitting the ISSUE F                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Kax<br>RR and PUBLIC                                                                                                                                                                           | (703)740-400<br>ATION FEE G                                                                                | required). Blocks 1 through 4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | should be completed who                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| propriate. All further con<br>dicated unless corrected l                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | respondence including the P<br>below or directed otherwise                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | atent, advance orders<br>in Block 1, by (a) spe                                                                                                                                                                                                     | and notification<br>cifying a new co                                                                                                                                                           | of maintenance for<br>prespondence add                                                                     | ees will be mailed to the current<br>ireas; and/or (b) indicating a sep                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | t correspondence address<br>arate "PEE ADDRESS"                                                              |
| CORRENT CORRESPONDENC                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | E ADDRESS (Nois: Logibly Bank-up<br>590 03/20/2003                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Sect 1)                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note: A certific<br>Fee(s) Transm<br>accompanying<br>formal drawing.                                       | ate of mailing can only be used f<br>ittal. This certificate cannot<br>papers. Each additional paper,<br>must have its own certificate of i                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | or domestic mailings of the<br>be used for any other<br>such as an assignment of<br>mailing or transmission. |
| James E. Walton<br>HILL & HUNN, L<br>Suite 1440<br>201 Main Street                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | LP                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 2003                                                                                                                                                                                           | I hereby certify<br>United States P<br>envelope addres                                                     | Certificate of Mailing or Tran<br>y that this Foo(s) Transmittal is<br>ostal Service with sufficient posts<br>used to the Box Issue Fee address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | semission<br>being deposited with the<br>age for first class mail in a<br>s above, or being facsimil         |
| Fort Worth, TX 76                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 102-3105                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | PIET COM                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | E .                                                                                                                                                                                            | James I                                                                                                    | e USPTO, on the date indicated indicated in the second sec | (Depositor's sar                                                                                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | TRANS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | MARTIN                                                                                                                                                                                         | Ac                                                                                                         | a E. West                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | (Signatu                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                | 0                                                                                                          | 6/3/03                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | (D                                                                                                           |
| APPLICATION NO.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | FILING DATE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | FIRS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | T NAMED INVEN                                                                                                                                                                                  | TOR                                                                                                        | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | CONFIRMATION NO.                                                                                             |
| 10/068,424                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 02/07/2002                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Gregory G. Kuelb                                                                                                                                                                               | 8                                                                                                          | 0638MH-40982-US                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 9580                                                                                                         |
| LE OF INVENTION: U                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | MBRELLA APPARATUS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | •<br>•                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | · .                                                                                                                                                                                            | . *                                                                                                        | · .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                              |
| APPLN. TYPE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | SMALL ENTITY                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | ISSUE FEE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | PUBL                                                                                                                                                                                           | ICATION FEB                                                                                                | TOTAL FEE(S) DUE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | DATE DUE                                                                                                     |
| nonprovisional                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | YES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | \$650                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                | \$0                                                                                                        | \$650                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 06/20/2003                                                                                                   |
| EXAMI                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | NER                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | ART UNIT                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | CLASS-SUBCI                                                                                                                                                                                    | ASS                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                              |
| SAWHNEY, HA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | RGOBIND S                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 2875                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 362-10200                                                                                                                                                                                      | 0                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                              |
| Change of correspondent<br>Address form PTO/SB/1:<br>"Fee Address" indicati<br>PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 (<br>Number is required.                                                                                                                                                                    | ence address (or Change of C<br>22) attached,<br>ion (or "Fee Address" Indicati<br>or more recent) attached. Use                                                                                                                                                                                                              | orrespondence<br>on form<br>of a Customer                                                                                                                                                                                                           | or agents OR,<br>single firm (ha<br>attorney or age<br>registered paten<br>is listed, no nam                                                                                                   | alternatively, (2)<br>wing as a memi-<br>ent) and the name<br>at attorneys or age-<br>the will be printed. | the name of a Melvi<br>ber a registered mes of up to 2<br>ants. If no name Hill                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | in A. Hunn<br>& Hunn LLP                                                                                     |
| ASSIGNEE NAME AND<br>LEASE NOTE: Unless a<br>sen previously submitted<br>A) NAME OF ASSIGNE                                                                                                                                                                                                     | RESIDENCE DATA TO BI<br>an assignce is identified below<br>to the USPTO or is being sal<br>E                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | E PRINTED ON THE<br>w, no assignee data wi<br>bmitted under separate<br>(B) RE                                                                                                                                                                      | PATENT (print of<br>ill sppear on the p<br>cover. Completic<br>SIDENCE: (CIT                                                                                                                   | r type)<br>patent. Inclusion of<br>n of this form is 1<br>Y and STATE OR                                   | of assignce data is only appropria<br>NOT a substitute for filing an assi<br>COUNTRY)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | tte when an assignment h<br>ignment.                                                                         |
| World Fac                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | tory, Inc.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | s                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | outhlak                                                                                                                                                                                        | e, Texas                                                                                                   | 3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                              |
| ase check the appropriate                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | assignee category or categor                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | ries (will not be printed                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | i on the patent)                                                                                                                                                                               | () individual                                                                                              | Corporation or other private (                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | group entity 🖸 governm                                                                                       |
| The following fee(s) are                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | enclosed:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 4b. Pay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | ment of Fee(s):                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                              |
| Issue Fee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | XQA ch                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | eck in the amoun                                                                                                                                                                               | t of the fee(s) is e                                                                                       | nclosed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                              |
| Publication Fee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Ci Payr                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | nent by credit car<br>Commissioner in                                                                                                                                                          | d. Form PTO-203<br>hearing authorized                                                                      | 8 is attached.<br>I bu choose the metriand fee(a), or                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | eredit env overnovment :                                                                                     |
| Advance Order - # of C                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Copies <u>10</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Deposi                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | t Account Numbe                                                                                                                                                                                | - 50-1060                                                                                                  | (enclose an extra copy of this                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | tion identified shown                                                                                        |
| nimissioner for Patents is                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | requested to apply the laste                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Fee and Fublication Fe                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                | -appry any previ                                                                                           | ously paid issue fee to the approx                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 88                                                                                                           |
| thorized Signature)<br><b>Marca-E.Wa</b><br>OTE: The Issue Fee an<br>her than the applicant;<br>terest as shown by the re                                                                                                                                                                       | d Publication Fee (if require<br>a registered attorney or age<br>cords of the United States Fa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | (Date)<br>7,245<br>d) will not be accept<br>mt; or the assignee of<br>tent and Trademark Of                                                                                                                                                         | od from anyone<br>r other party in<br>flice.                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 10064474<br>550-09<br>30-09                                                                                  |
| is collection of informi-<br>rain or retain a benefit<br>pilocation. Confidentialit<br>finated to take 12 minu<br>xmpleted application for<br>use. Any comments on<br>ggestions for reducing<br>filent and Trademark off<br>OT SEND FEES OR<br>ommissioner for Patens,<br>nder the Paperwork Re | tion is required by 37 CFR<br>by the public which is to fil<br>its governed by 33 U.S.C. I:<br>tes to complete, including a<br>m to the USF10. Time will<br>the amount of time you r<br>his burden, should be sent t<br>hoe, U.S. Department of Con<br>COMFLETED FORMS<br>Washington, DC 20231.<br>sciencia Act of 1995, ao g | 1.311. The informatic<br>te (and by the USPTC<br>22 and 37 CFR 1.14. 1<br>thering, preparing, and<br>1 vary depending upo<br>equire to complete th<br>o the Chief Informatic<br>numerce, Washington, 1<br>TO THIS ADDRES<br>censors are required to | in is required to<br>b to process) an<br>Inis collection is<br>d submitting the<br>n the individual<br>ins form and/or<br>on Officer, U.S.<br>D.C. 20231. DO<br>S. SEND TO:<br>to respond to a |                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 33 Materiana: 000000/4                                                                                       |
| ollection of information u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | mless it displays a valid OME                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | s control number.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | -                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                              |
| 'OL-85 (REV. 04-02) Aş                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | pproved for use through 01/3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 1KANSMIT TH<br>1/2004. OMB 0651-00                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 15 FURM WITH<br>33 U.S. 1                                                                                                                                                                      | FEE(S)<br>Patent and Traden                                                                                | nark Office; U.S. DEPARTMEN                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>Собраниетсе</b><br><b>У</b> ОТ-1002-020                                                                   |

1.

.

|                           | ED STATES PATENT | and Trademark Office |                                                                                                                                                      |                                                     |
|---------------------------|------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
|                           |                  |                      | UNITED STATES DEPARTM<br>United States Patent and TN<br>Address: COMMISSIONER FOR P<br>PO. Box 1450<br>Alexandra, Vignina 22313-145<br>www.uppto.gov | 1ENT OF COMMERCE<br>rademark Office<br>ATENTS<br>50 |
| APPLICATION NO.           | FILING DATE      | FIRST NAMED INVENTOR | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.                                                                                                                                  | CONFIRMATION NO.                                    |
| 10/068,424                | 02/07/2002       | Gregory G. Kuelbs    | 0638MH-40982-US                                                                                                                                      | 9580                                                |
| 75                        | 90 07/28/2003    |                      |                                                                                                                                                      |                                                     |
| James E. Walt             | on               |                      | EXAM                                                                                                                                                 | INER                                                |
| HILL & HUNN<br>Suite 1440 | I, LLP           |                      | SAWHNEY, HA                                                                                                                                          | ARGOBIND S                                          |
| Fort Worth, TX            | 76102-3105       |                      | ART UNIT                                                                                                                                             | PAPER NUMBER                                        |
| ····,                     |                  |                      | 2875                                                                                                                                                 |                                                     |
|                           |                  |                      | DATE MAILED: 07/28/2003                                                                                                                              |                                                     |

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

.

PTO-90C (Rev. 07-01)

YOT-1002-0207

,

|                                    |                                                                                                        | Application No.                                                         | Applicant(s)                                    |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
|                                    | 1                                                                                                      |                                                                         |                                                 |
| Response to Rule 312 Communication |                                                                                                        | 10/068,424                                                              | KUELBS, GREGORY G.                              |
|                                    |                                                                                                        | Examiner                                                                | Art Unit                                        |
|                                    |                                                                                                        | Hargobind S Sawhney                                                     | 2875                                            |
|                                    | The MAILING DATE of this communication                                                                 | n appears on the cover sheet wi                                         | th the correspondence address –                 |
| a) 🛛                               | amendment filed on <u>10 June 2003</u> under 37 CFR<br>entered.                                        | 1.312 has been considered, and                                          | has been:                                       |
| b) 🗖                               | entered as directed to matters of form not affect                                                      | ing the scope of the invention.                                         |                                                 |
| c) 🗌                               | disapproved because the amendment was filed                                                            | after the payment of the issue fee                                      | ð.                                              |
|                                    | Any amendment filed after the date the issue<br>and the required fee to withdraw the applicat          | e fee is paid must be accompanied<br>ion from issue.                    | l by a petition under 37 CFR 1.313(c)(1         |
| d) 🗌                               | disapproved. See explanation below.                                                                    |                                                                         |                                                 |
| e) 🗌                               | entered in part. See explanation below.                                                                |                                                                         |                                                 |
| The r<br>chang                     | equested changes in figures 2C and 3C,and in pa<br>ges do not affect the scope of the invention. Furth | ages 13 and 16 of the specificatior<br>er, the requested changes do not | n have been entered as these<br>add new matter. |
|                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                         |                                                 |
|                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                         |                                                 |
|                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                         |                                                 |
|                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                         |                                                 |
|                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                         |                                                 |
|                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                         | Sandra O'Shea                                   |
|                                    |                                                                                                        | ( Sup<br>Te                                                             | chnology Center 2800                            |
|                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                         |                                                 |
|                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                         |                                                 |
|                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                         |                                                 |

| AO 120 | (Rev. 08/10)                                                    |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| TO:    | Mail Stop 8<br>Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office |
|        | P.O. Box 1450                                                   |
|        | Alexandria, VA 22313-1450                                       |

#### REPORT ON THE FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR TRADEMARK

In Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been filed in the U.S. District Court Northern District of Texas on the following

| DOCKET NO.<br>3:14-cv-1348 | DATE FILED<br>4/14/2014        | U.S. DISTRICT COURT<br>Northern District of Texas |                               |  |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| PLAINTIFF                  | Later - V                      | DEFENDANT                                         |                               |  |
| LakeSouth Holdings, LL     | С                              | Ace Evert, Inc.                                   |                               |  |
|                            |                                |                                                   |                               |  |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK |                                                   | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK |  |
| 1 6,612,713                | 9/2/2003                       | LakeSouth Holdings, LLC                           |                               |  |
| 2                          |                                |                                                   |                               |  |
| 3                          |                                |                                                   |                               |  |
| 4                          |                                |                                                   |                               |  |
| 5                          |                                |                                                   |                               |  |

In the above-entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED              | INCLUDED BY                    |       |        |                |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------|--------|----------------|----------------|
|                            | Amen                           | dment | Answer | Cross Bill     | Other Pleading |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK |       | HOLDE  | R OF PATENT OR | IRADEMARK      |
| 1                          |                                |       |        |                |                |
| 2                          |                                |       |        |                |                |
| 3                          |                                |       |        |                |                |
| 4                          |                                |       |        |                |                |
| 5                          |                                |       |        |                |                |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| ECISION/JUDGEMENT |       |
|-------------------|-------|
|                   |       |
|                   |       |
|                   | DATE  |
| LERK              | DITLE |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

#### Case 3:14-cv-01877-M Document 5 Filed 05/23/14 Page 1 of 1 PageID 70

AO 120 (Rev. 08/10)

| Mail Stop 8TO:Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office<br>P.O. Box 1450<br>Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 | REPORT ON THE<br>FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN<br>ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

 In Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been filed in the U.S. District Court
 Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division
 on the following

 □ Trademarks or
 ☑ Patents.
 ( □ the patent action involves 35 U.S.C. § 292.):
 ( □ the patent action involves 35 U.S.C. § 292.):

| DOCKET NO.<br>3:14-cv-01877-M | DATE FILED<br>5/22/2014        | U.S. DISTRICT COURT<br>Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division |                           |  |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| PLAINTIFF                     |                                | DEFENDANT                                                          |                           |  |
| LakeSouth Holdings LLC        |                                |                                                                    | Wal-Mart Stores Inc et al |  |
|                               |                                |                                                                    |                           |  |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO.    | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK                                      |                           |  |
| 1 6,612,713 BI                | 9/2/2003                       | World Factory, Inc                                                 |                           |  |
| 2 6,612,713 Cl                | 9/23/2013                      | Vorld Factory, Inc.                                                |                           |  |
| 3 6,901,882 B2                | 6/7/2005                       | Vorld Factory, Inc.                                                |                           |  |
| 4 7,017,521 B2                | 3/28/2006                      | Vorld Factory, Inc.                                                |                           |  |
| 5                             |                                |                                                                    |                           |  |

#### In the above-entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED              | INCLUDED BY                    |       |        |                |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------|--------|----------------|----------------|
|                            |                                | dment | Answer | Cross Bill     | Other Pleading |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK |       | HOLDE  | R OF PATENT OR | TRADEMARK      |
| 1                          |                                |       |        |                |                |
| 2                          |                                |       |        |                |                |
| 3                          |                                |       |        |                |                |
| 4                          |                                |       |        |                |                |
| 5                          |                                |       |        |                |                |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| DECISION/JUDGEMENT |                   |           |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------|
|                    |                   |           |
|                    |                   |           |
| CLERK              | (BY) DEPUTY CLERK | DATE      |
| Karen Mitchell     | s/Shakira K. Todd | 5/23/2014 |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

#### Case 3:14-cv-01877-M Document 5 Filed 05/23/14 Page 1 of 1 PageID 70

AO 120 (Rev. 08/10)
TO: Mail Stop 8
TO: Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450
REPORT ON THE
FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN
ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR
TRADEMARK

In Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been filed in the U.S. District Court Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division on the following Trademarks or I Patents. ( the patent action involves 35 U.S.C. § 292.):

| DOCKET NO.<br>3:14-cv-01877-M | DATE FILED<br>5/22/2014        | U.S. DISTRICT COURT<br>Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| PLAINTIFF                     |                                | DEFENDANT                                                          |  |  |
| LakeSouth Holdings LLC        |                                | Wal-Mart Stores Inc et al                                          |  |  |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO.    | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK                                      |  |  |
| 1 6,612,713 BI                | 9/2/2003                       | World Factory, Inc                                                 |  |  |
| 2 6,612,713 Cl                | 9/23/2013                      | \Vorld Factory, Inc.                                               |  |  |
| 3 6,901,882 B2                | 6/7/2005                       | Vorld Factory, Inc.                                                |  |  |
| 4 7,017,521 B2                | 3/28/2006                      | Vorld Factory, Inc.                                                |  |  |
| 5                             |                                |                                                                    |  |  |

## In the above---entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED              | INCLUDED BY                    |               |                |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
|                            |                                | nent 🗌 Answer | Cross Bill     | Other Pleading |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDE         | R OF PATENT OR | TRADEMARK      |
| 1                          |                                |               |                |                |
| 2                          |                                |               |                |                |
| 3                          |                                |               |                |                |
| 4                          |                                |               |                |                |
| 5                          |                                |               |                |                |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| DECISION/JUDGEMENT |                      |               |
|--------------------|----------------------|---------------|
|                    |                      |               |
|                    | I (RV) DEPITY CI ERK | IDATE         |
| CLERK              |                      | DATE STOCKOLD |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

<u>Trials@uspto.gov</u> 571-272-7822

:

t

Paper 11 Entered: July 8, 2015

# UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD.

ACE EVERT, INC., Petitioner,

v.

LAKESOUTH HOLDINGS, LLC, Patent Owner.

Case IPR2015-00987 Patent 6,612,713 B1

Before MICHAEL W. KIM, KRISTINA M. KALAN, and BETH Z. SHAW, *Administrative Patent Judges*.

KALAN, Administrative Patent Judge.

TERMINATION Dismissing the Proceeding 37 C.F.R. § 42.5(a), 37 C.F.R. § 42.71(a)

#### IPR2015-00987 Patent 6,612,713 B1

The parties have requested that the above-captioned proceeding be terminated pursuant to a settlement. The Board authorized the parties to file a joint motion to terminate the above-captioned proceeding on July 1, 2015.

On July 6, 2015, and pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 317, the parties filed a joint motion to terminate the above-captioned proceeding (Paper 9), along with a joint motion to file the settlement agreement as business confidential information, to be kept separate from the patent file pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 317(b) and 37 C.F.R. § 42.74(c) (Paper 10). The joint motion to file the settlement agreement as business confidential information included a copy of the settlement agreement. Paper 10, Exhibit 1.

Generally, the Board expects that a proceeding will terminate after the filing of a settlement agreement. *See, e.g.*, Office Patent Trial Practice Guide, 77 Fed. Reg. 48,756, 48,768 (Aug. 14, 2012). This case is in the preliminary proceeding stage. A preliminary proceeding begins with the filing of a petition for instituting a trial and ends with a written decision as to whether trial will be instituted. *See* 37 C.F.R. § 42.2. Petitioner filed a Petition on April 1, 2015. Patent Owner has not yet filed a Preliminary Response, which is due on or before July 10, 2015. No decision whether to institute a trial has been made.

The joint motion to terminate indicates that the parties have settled their dispute involving U.S. Patent No. 6,612,713 B1 ("the '713 patent"). Paper 9, 1. The joint motion to terminate further indicates that the '713 Patent "is not the subject of any other proceeding pending before the United States Patent & Trademark Office, and there are no current or contemplated pending litigation proceedings involving the '713 Patent." *Id.* at 2.

### IPR2015-00987 Patent 6,612,713 B1

Based on the facts of the case, and in view of the parties' joint request for termination of this proceeding, we determine that it is appropriate to dismiss the petition as to both Petitioner and Patent Owner without rendering either a decision to institute or a final written decision. *See* 37 C.F.R.  $\S$  42.5(a); 42.71(a). Therefore, the joint motion to terminate and the request to treat the settlement agreement as business confidential information are *granted*. This paper does not constitute a final written decision pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 318(a).

Accordingly, it is

ORDERED that the joint motion to treat the settlement agreement as business confidential information, to be kept separate from the patent file, is granted;

FURTHER ORDERED that the joint motion to terminate the proceeding is *granted*; and

FURTHER ORDERED that the Petition for *Inter Partes* Review of the above-referenced patent is *dismissed*.

IPR2015-00987 Patent 6,612,713 B1

• •

•

FOR PETITIONER:

Jeffrey A. Pine Steven McMahon Zeller DYKEMA GOSSETT PLLC jpine@dykema.com szeller@dykema.com

FOR PATENT OWNER:

Michael A. Benefield ALBRITTON LAW FIRM <u>ls@emafirm.com</u>

YOT-1002-0215

.

.

٦

| AO 120 (Rev. 08/10)                                                                                                                          |                                                                                    |                                                                                             |                                                                                      |                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| AO 120 (Kev. 08/10)<br>TO: Mail Stop 8<br>TO: Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office<br>P.O. Box 1450<br>Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 |                                                                                    | REPORT ON THE<br>FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN<br>ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK |                                                                                      |                                           |
| In Complian<br>filed in the U.S. Dis<br>Trademarks or                                                                                        | ce with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 1:<br>strict Court<br>Patents. (  the patent active | 5 U.S.C. §<br>Northe                                                                        | 1116 you are hereby advised that a<br>ern District of Texas<br>is 35 U.S.C. § 292.): | court action has been<br>on the following |
| DOCKET NO.<br>3:14-cy-1348                                                                                                                   | DATE FILED<br>4/14/2014                                                            | U.S. D                                                                                      | STRICT COURT<br>Northern Distric                                                     | ct of Texas                               |
| PLAINTIFF                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                    |                                                                                             | DEFENDANT                                                                            |                                           |
| LakeSouth Holdings, Ll                                                                                                                       | LC                                                                                 |                                                                                             | Ace Evert, Inc.                                                                      |                                           |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO.                                                                                                                   | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK                                                     |                                                                                             | HOLDER OF PATENT                                                                     | OR TRADEMARK                              |
| 1 6,612,713                                                                                                                                  | 9/2/2003                                                                           | LakeSouth Holdings, LLC                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                           |
| 2                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                    |                                                                                             |                                                                                      |                                           |
| 3                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                    |                                                                                             |                                                                                      |                                           |
| 4                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                    | +-                                                                                          |                                                                                      |                                           |
|                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                    |                                                                                             |                                                                                      |                                           |
| 5                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                    |                                                                                             |                                                                                      |                                           |

# In the above-entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED              | INCLUDED BY                    | ment 🗌 Answer 🗌 Cro           | oss Bill 🔲 Other Pleading |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK |                           |
| 1                          |                                |                               |                           |
| 2                          |                                |                               |                           |
| 3                          |                                |                               |                           |
| 4                          |                                |                               |                           |
| 5                          |                                |                               |                           |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| DECISION/JUDGEMENT      |                   |           |  |  |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-----------|--|--|
| Order entered 9/25/2015 |                   |           |  |  |
|                         |                   |           |  |  |
|                         |                   |           |  |  |
| CLERK                   | (BY) DEPUTY CLERK | DATE      |  |  |
| Karen Mitchell          | s/B. Boles        | 9/25/2015 |  |  |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

YOT-1002-0216

٦
# Case 2:15-cv-07562 Document 7 Filed 09/25/15 Page 1 of 2 Page ID #:126

| AO 120 (Rev. 08/10)                                                                                              |                                                                              |                    |                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| Mail Stop 8<br>O: Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office<br>P.O. Box 1450<br>Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 |                                                                              |                    | REPORT ON THE<br>FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN<br>ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK                                                  |  |  |
| In Compliance<br>filed in the U.S. Distr<br>Trademarks or                                                        | with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15<br>ict Court<br>Patents. (  the patent action | U.S.C. §<br>Centra | 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been         District of California       on the following         28 35 U.S.C. § 292.): |  |  |
| DOCKET NO.<br>2:15-cv-07562<br>PLAINTIFF<br>SECURED MAIL SOLUT                                                   | DATE FILED<br>FIONS, LLC                                                     | U.S. D             | ISTRICT COURT<br>Central District of California<br>DEFENDANT<br>UNIVERSAL WILDE, INC.                                                        |  |  |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO.                                                                                       | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK                                               |                    | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK                                                                                                                |  |  |
| <sup>1</sup> See Attachment "A"                                                                                  |                                                                              |                    |                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 2                                                                                                                |                                                                              |                    |                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 3                                                                                                                |                                                                              |                    |                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 4                                                                                                                |                                                                              |                    |                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 5                                                                                                                |                                                                              |                    |                                                                                                                                              |  |  |

In the above-entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED              | INCLUDED BY                    | dment 🔲 Answer 🔲 Cross Bill 🗌 Other Pleading |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK                |
| 1                          |                                |                                              |
| 2                          |                                |                                              |
| 3                          | <br>                           |                                              |
| 4                          |                                |                                              |
| 5                          |                                |                                              |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| DECISION/JUDGEMENT |                   |      |
|--------------------|-------------------|------|
|                    |                   |      |
| CLERK              | (BY) DEPUTY CLERK | DATE |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

YOT-1002-0217

Case 2:15-cv-07562 Document 7 Filed 09/25/15 Page 2 of 2 Page ID #:127

|    | DATENTOP   | DATE OF PATENT | HOLDER OF PATENT OR         |
|----|------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
|    | TRATENT OK | OR TRADEMARK   | TRADEMARK                   |
| 1. | 7,814,032  | 10/12/2010     | Secured Mail Solutions, LLC |
| 2. | 7,818,268  | 10/19/2010     | Secured Mail Solutions, LLC |
| 3. | 8,073,787  | 12/6/2011      | Secured Mail Solutions, LLC |
| 4. | 8,260,629  | 9/4/2012       | Secured Mail Solutions, LLC |
| 5. | 8,429,093  | 4/23/2013      | Secured Mail Solutions, LLC |
| 6. | 8,910,860  | 12/16/2014     | Secured Mail Solutions, LLC |
| 7. | 9,105,002  | 8/11/2015      | Secured Mail Solutions, LLC |
|    |            |                |                             |

# Attachment A

YOT-1002-0218

DECISION/JUDGEMENT

| TO: | Mail Stop 8<br>Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | P.O. Box 1450                                                   |
|     | Alexandria, VA 22313-1450                                       |

# REPORT ON THE FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR TRADEMARK

In Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been filed in the U.S. District Court \_\_\_\_\_\_ On the following \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the following

☑ Trademarks or □ Patents. (□ the patent action involves 35 U.S.C. § 292.):

| DOCKET NO.<br>3:16-cv-1027 | DATE FILED<br>4/15/2016        | U.S. DISTRICT COURT<br>Northern District of Texas |                                                       |  |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--|
| PLAINTIFF                  |                                |                                                   | DEFENDANT                                             |  |
| LakeSouth Holdings, LLC    |                                |                                                   | Tuesday Morning Corporation and Tuesday Morning, Inc. |  |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK                     |                                                       |  |
| 1 6,612,713 B1             | 9/2/2003                       | LakeSouth Holdings, LLC                           |                                                       |  |
| 2 6,612,713 C1             | 9/23/2013                      | LakeSouth Holdings, LLC                           |                                                       |  |
| 3 8,794,781 B2             | 8/5/2014                       | LakeSouth Holdings, LLC                           |                                                       |  |
| 4                          |                                |                                                   |                                                       |  |
| 5                          |                                |                                                   |                                                       |  |

#### In the above-entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED              | INCLUDED BY                    |                |                   |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
|                            | Amen                           | dment 🗌 Answer | Cross Bill        | Other Pleading |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDI          | ER OF PATENT OR T | FRADEMARK      |
| 1                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 2                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 3                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 4                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 5                          |                                |                |                   |                |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| CLERK          | (BY) DEPUTY CLERK | DATE      |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------|
| CLERK OF COURT | s/S. Shelby       | 4/15/2016 |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

YOT-1002-0219

DECISION/JUDGEMENT

| TO: | Mail Stop 8<br>Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | P.O. Box 1450                                                   |
|     | Alexandria, VA 22313-1450                                       |

# REPORT ON THE FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR TRADEMARK

In Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been filed in the U.S. District Court Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division on the following

| DOCKET NO.<br>3:16-cv-1026-G | DATE FILED<br>4/15/2016        | U.S. DISTRICT COURT<br>Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division |                            |  |  |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|
| PLAINTIFF                    |                                | D                                                                  | DEFENDANT                  |  |  |
| LakeSouth Holdings LLC       | )                              |                                                                    | Lowe's Companies Inc et al |  |  |
|                              |                                |                                                                    |                            |  |  |
|                              |                                |                                                                    |                            |  |  |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO.   | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK                                      |                            |  |  |
| 1 6,612,713 B1               | 9/2/2003                       | LakeSouth Holdings LLC                                             |                            |  |  |
| 2 6,612,713 C1               | 9/23/2013                      | LakeSouth Holdings LLC                                             |                            |  |  |
| 3 8,794,781 B2               | 8/5/2014                       | LakeSouth Holdings LLC                                             |                            |  |  |
| 4                            |                                |                                                                    |                            |  |  |
| 5                            |                                |                                                                    |                            |  |  |

#### In the above-entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED              | INCLUDED BY                    |              |                 |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|
|                            | Amen                           | dment Answer | Cross Bill      | Other Pleading |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDI        | ER OF PATENT OR | TRADEMARK      |
| 1                          |                                |              |                 |                |
| 2                          |                                |              |                 |                |
| 3                          |                                |              |                 |                |
| 4                          |                                |              |                 |                |
| 5                          |                                |              |                 |                |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| CLERK          | (BY) DEPLITY CLERK | DATE      |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------|
|                |                    |           |
| Karen Mitchell | s/T. Knighton      | 4/15/2016 |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

YOT-1002-0220

DECISION/JUDGEMENT

| TO: | Mail Stop 8                                      |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------|
|     | Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office |
|     | P.O. Box 1450                                    |
|     | Alexandria, VA 22313-1450                        |

# REPORT ON THE FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR TRADEMARK

In Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been filed in the U.S. District Court Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division on the following

| DOCKET NO.<br>3:16-cv-1024-D | DATE FILED<br>4/15/2016        | U.S. DISTRICT COURT<br>Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division |                                    |  |  |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|
| PLAINTIFF                    |                                | 1                                                                  | DEFENDANT                          |  |  |
| LakeSouth Holdings LLC       | ;                              |                                                                    | Kohl's Department Stores Inc et al |  |  |
|                              |                                |                                                                    |                                    |  |  |
|                              |                                |                                                                    |                                    |  |  |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO.   | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK |                                                                    | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK      |  |  |
| 1 6,612,713 B1               | 9/2/2003                       | LakeSouth Holdings LLC                                             |                                    |  |  |
| 2 6,612,713 C1               | 9/23/2013                      | LakeSouth Holdings LLC                                             |                                    |  |  |
| 3 8,794,781 B2               | 8/5/2014                       | LakeSouth Holdings LLC                                             |                                    |  |  |
| 4                            |                                |                                                                    |                                    |  |  |
| 5                            |                                |                                                                    |                                    |  |  |

#### In the above-entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED BY           |                                |              |                 |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|
|                            | Amen                           | dment Answer | Cross Bill      | Other Pleading |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDI        | ER OF PATENT OR | TRADEMARK      |
| 1                          |                                |              |                 |                |
| 2                          |                                |              |                 |                |
| 3                          |                                |              |                 |                |
| 4                          |                                |              |                 |                |
| 5                          |                                |              |                 |                |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| CLERK          | (BY) DEPLITY CLERK | DATE      |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------|
|                | o/T Krishter       |           |
| Karen Mitchell | s/ I. Knighton     | 4/15/2016 |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

YOT-1002-0221

DECISION/JUDGEMENT

| TO: | Mail Stop 8<br>Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | P.O. Box 1450                                                   |
|     | Alexandria, VA 22313-1450                                       |

# REPORT ON THE FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR TRADEMARK

In Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been filed in the U.S. District Court Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division on the following

| DOCKET NO.<br>3:16-cv-1026-G | DATE FILED<br>4/15/2016        | U.S. DISTRICT COURT<br>Northern District of Texas, Dallas Division |                            |  |  |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|
| PLAINTIFF                    |                                |                                                                    | DEFENDANT                  |  |  |
| LakeSouth Holdings LLC       | ;                              |                                                                    | Lowe's Companies Inc et al |  |  |
|                              |                                |                                                                    |                            |  |  |
|                              |                                |                                                                    |                            |  |  |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO.   | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK                                      |                            |  |  |
| 1 6,612,713 B1               | 9/2/2003                       | LakeSouth Holdings LLC                                             |                            |  |  |
| 2 6,612,713 C1               | 9/23/2013                      | LakeSouth Holdings LLC                                             |                            |  |  |
| 3 8,794,781 B2               | 8/5/2014                       | LakeSouth Holdings LLC                                             |                            |  |  |
| 4                            |                                |                                                                    |                            |  |  |
| 5                            |                                |                                                                    |                            |  |  |

#### In the above-entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED              | INCLUDED BY                    |                |                   |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
|                            | Amen                           | dment 🗌 Answer | Cross Bill        | Other Pleading |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLD           | ER OF PATENT OR ' | FRADEMARK      |
| 1                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 2                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 3                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 4                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 5                          |                                |                |                   |                |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| CLERK          | (BY) DEPLITY CLERK | DATE      |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------|
|                |                    |           |
| Karen Mitchell | s/T. Knighton      | 4/15/2016 |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

YOT-1002-0222

DECISION/JUDGEMENT

| TO: | Mail Stop 8<br>Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | P.O. Box 1450                                                   |
|     | Alexandria, VA 22313-1450                                       |

# REPORT ON THE FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR TRADEMARK

In Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been filed in the U.S. District Court \_\_\_\_\_\_ On the following \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the following

☑ Trademarks or □ Patents. (□ the patent action involves 35 U.S.C. § 292.):

| DOCKET NO.<br>3:16-cv-1027 | DATE FILED<br>4/15/2016        | U.S. DISTRICT COURT<br>Northern District of Texas |                                                       |  |  |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| PLAINTIFF                  |                                |                                                   | DEFENDANT                                             |  |  |
| LakeSouth Holdings, LLC    |                                |                                                   | Tuesday Morning Corporation and Tuesday Morning, Inc. |  |  |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK                     |                                                       |  |  |
| 1 6,612,713 B1             | 9/2/2003                       | LakeSouth Holdings, LLC                           |                                                       |  |  |
| 2 6,612,713 C1             | 9/23/2013                      | LakeSouth Holdings, LLC                           |                                                       |  |  |
| 3 8,794,781 B2             | 8/5/2014                       | LakeSouth Holdings, LLC                           |                                                       |  |  |
| 4                          |                                |                                                   |                                                       |  |  |
| 5                          |                                |                                                   |                                                       |  |  |

#### In the above-entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

| DATE INCLUDED              | INCLUDED BY                    |                |                   |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
|                            | Amen                           | dment 🗌 Answer | Cross Bill        | Other Pleading |
| PATENT OR<br>TRADEMARK NO. | DATE OF PATENT<br>OR TRADEMARK | HOLDI          | ER OF PATENT OR T | FRADEMARK      |
| 1                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 2                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 3                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 4                          |                                |                |                   |                |
| 5                          |                                |                |                   |                |

In the above-entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

| CLERK          | (BY) DEPUTY CLERK | DATE      |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------|
| CLERK OF COURT | s/S. Shelby       | 4/15/2016 |

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy

YOT-1002-0223